DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 267 594 FL 015 487

AUTHOR Qafisheh, Hamdi A.
TITLE Yemeni Arabic II.
INSTITUTION Arizona Univ., Tucson. Dept. of Oriental Studies.
SPONS AGENCY Department of Education, Washington, DC.
PUB DATE 84
CONTRACT G00-83-2151
NOTE 291p.; For related document, see FL 015 486.
PUB TYPE Guides - Classroom Use - Materials (For Learner) (051)

EDRS PRICE MF01/PC12 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS *Arabic; Classroom Techniques; Conversational Language Courses; Curriculum Guides; Daily Living Skills; Dialects; *Dialogs (Language); Grammar; Instructional Materials; Listening Comprehension; *Pattern Drills (Language); Pronunciation; Second Language Instruction; *Speech Communication; *Vocabulary
IDENTIFIERS Yemen

ABSTRACT

Instructional materials for advanced Sanaani Arabic, a dialect used predominantly for oral communication, include 25 units consisting of text derived from recordings of spontaneous conversations of native speakers in various communication situations. Some of the topics are: medical services, marriage, jobs, an interview, a car accident, proverbs and sayings, Yemen, informing others, public baths, and circumcision. The lessons include the following sections: translation of the text; a list of vocabulary occurring in the text; additional related vocabulary; pronunciation notes; notes on grammar and constructions; drills using items in the lesson; and conversations and listening comprehension passages using familiar vocabulary in a new context. Introductory notes on use of the materials and a bilingual glossary are also included. (MSE)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED267594

Title VI, Sec. 605, HEA
G00-83-2151

YEMENI ARABIC
II

HAMDI A. QAFISHEH

DEPARTMENT OF ORIENTAL STUDIES
UNIVERSITY OF ARIZONA
Tucson, Arizona

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

X This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

FL015987

This work was funded by a grant (Goo-83-02151) from the U.S. Department of Education under the International Research and Studies Program, authorized by Title VI of the Higher Education Act of 1965 as amended.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to express my thanks and appreciation to all those who helped in the preparation of this book. First, to the administrators of the U.S. Department of Education, the International Research and Studies Program, authorized by Title VI of the Higher Education Act of 1965 as amended, for the grant that made this study possible. To Professor Ernest McCarus, Department of Near Eastern Studies, the University of Michigan, goes my deepest appreciation for having made a number of corrections and suggestions. Thanks are also due to Ms. Bonnie Glover of the UCLA Department of Linguistics for her discerning comments and suggestions; to my research assistants, Mr. Mutahhar Abdulkadir and Ms. Amina Al-Jabaly of this University for their assistance and patience throughout; to my language informants, Mutahhar Abdulkadir, Abdulkadir Bin Abdalla, Zaid Anan and Ismail Al-Akwa' of Sanaa; to Mr. Lee Samore of this Department for his assistance and preparing the glossary; to Ms. Karima Mansour for typing portions of the texts; and to Ms. Barbara Cook for an efficient production of the final copy of the manuscript. I am grateful to Dr. Abdulaziz Al-Magalih, Rector of Sanaa University and Director of the Yemeni Center for Research and Studies for his assistance in facilitating my work in Yemen. Last, but not least, my hearty thanks go to the administrators of the University of Arizona, Dr. Myles Brand, Dean of the Social and Behavioral Sciences Faculty, and Dr. Robert Gimello, Head of the Department of Oriental Studies, for their support and interest.

Tucson, Arizona H.A.Q.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
	UNIT 41	399
	Review (Units 32-36)	
	UNIT 42	405
	Review (Units 37-40)	
	UNIT 43	411
I.	TEXT: At the Clinic	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	1. Class I Verbs	
	2. Stem Vowels	
VI.	DRILLS	
VII.	LISTENING COMPREHENSION	
	UNIT 44	426
I.	TEXT: Marriage	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	1. Class II Verbs	
	2. The Imperative	
VI.	DRILLS	
VII.	CONVERSATIONS	
	UNIT 45	439
I.	TEXT: Jobs	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	1. Class III Verbs	
	2. Class IV Verbs	
	3. Collective Nouns	
VI.	DRILLS	
VII.	LISTENING COMPREHENSION	
	UNIT 46	451
I.	TEXT: Getting Married	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	Class V Verbs	
	UNIT 47	462
I.	TEXT: Interview	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	Class VI Verbs	
	UNIT 48	473
I.	TEXT: A Car Accident	
II.	TRANSLATION	
III.	VOCABULARY	
IV.	ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY	
V.	GRAMMAR	
	1. Class VII Verbs	
	2. Class VIII Verbs	

Page

VI. DRILLS

UNIT 49 485
I. TEXT: Proverbs and Sayings
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. GRAMMAR
1. Class IX Verbs
2. Class X Verbs
VI. DRILLS

UNIT 50 497
Review (Units 43-49)

UNIT 51 504
I. TEXT: Yemen
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
Quadriliteral Verbs
VI. DRILLS
VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 52 516
I. TEXT: Cities in Yemen
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
Verbal Nouns (Class I)
VI. DRILLS

Page

UNIT 53 526
I. TEXT: Those Attending Will Inform Those Who are Absent
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
Verbal Nouns (Classes II-V)
VI. CONVERSATION

UNIT 54 537
I. TEXT: Public Baths
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
1. Verbal Nouns (Classes VI-X)
2. Quadriliterals
VI. DRILLS

UNIT 55 549
Review (Units 51-54)

UNIT 56 553
I. TEXT: Circumcision
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
Active Participles (I-IV)

UNIT 57 565
I. TEXT: Between Husband and Wife

Page

II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
1. hayya
2. gad
3. Noun-Adj. Agreement
4. Active Participles (VI-X)

UNIT 58 578
I. TEXT: Those Attending Will Inform Those Who Are Absent
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
1. Instance Nouns
2. Passive Participles
VI. DRILLS

UNIT 59 588
I. TEXT: Proverbs and Sayings
II. TRANSLATION
III. VOCABULARY
IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
V. GRAMMAR
1. False Constructs
2. Possession
3. Negation

UNIT 60 600
Review (Units 56-59)

Page

UNIT 61 608
I. TEXT: One Dhamari Is Worth Two Sanaanis
II. VOCABULARY
III. NOTES
IV. ARABIC TEXT

UNIT 62 612
I. TEXT: At the Public Bath
II. VOCABULARY
III. NOTES
IV. ARABIC TEXT

UNIT 63 619
I. TEXT: The Wedding
II. VOCABULARY
III. NOTES
IV. ARABIC TEXT

UNIT 64 628
I. TEXT: 1. The King and the Poor Man's Daughter
2. The Stupid Man
II. VOCABULARY
III. NOTES
IV. ARABIC TEXTS

UNIT 65 635
I. TEXT
II. VOCABULARY
III. NOTES
IV. ARABIC TEXT

GLOSSARY: Yemeni Arabic - English

INTRODUCTION

YAII is a continuation of YAI and is an advanced course in Sanaani Arabic. It contains twenty-five lessons with an active vocabulary of approximately 2,000 items selected from a frequency word list which this investigator has initially prepared. The dialogs and narratives are longer and more specialized than the average in YAI; they aid students to express themselves with ease on general and specialized topics, such as family and children, marriage, holidays, geographical locations, goods and services, education, maladies and ailments, politics, etc. There are two units of proverbs and sayings, UNIT 49 and UNIT 59; each unit contains thirty proverbs, which have been chosen on the basis of frequency of occurrence. UNITS 53 and 58 are selections from the radio broadcast series known as 'al-Haaḍir yi9lim al-Gaayib 'Those Attending Will Inform Those Who Are Absent'; they have been slightly edited. UNITS 41, 42, 50, 55, and 60 are review units; they review vocabulary and grammatical construction in previous units: UNIT 41 reviews UNITS 32-36; UNIT 42 reviews UNITS 37-40; UNIT 50 reviews UNITS 43-49, UNIT 55 reviews UNITS 51-54, and UNIT 60 reviews UNITS 56-59. The last five units of the book are stories, anecdotes, and folktales from storytellers and other informants. Each unit contains a text, vocabulary, notes on the text, and the text in Arabic. Other units in the book deal with topics of interest, such as vocations, car accidents, Yemen, cities in Yemen, public baths, and circumcision.

In YAII an attempt has been made to present grammar in a systematic way, so that by the end of the book the learner will have acquired a virtually complete description of the basic structure of Sanaani Arabic. The derivation and inflection of verbal norms, active and passive participles, unit nouns, instance nouns, classes of verbs I-X, qudriliteral and derived quadriliteral verbs are dealt with in some detail.

In the DRILLS sections of the book emphasis is placed on communication, completion, and listening comprehension drills. In YAI there are 45 conversations and thirteen listening comprehension passages in addition to the dialogs and narratives of the lessons. In YAII there are less conversations, and listening comprehension passages; more attention is paid to communicative drills and oral composition. The long narratives and dialogs of the lessons

of YAII should be treated as listening comprehension passages. In YAII students are ready for guided and free composition. For guided composition students are given key words about a story or a dialog they have listened to and understood. They are asked to reproduce the story or dialog with the help of key words. The next stage is to ask students to tell a story or a description of an event from a picture or some other visual aid and key words. The last stage is the free composition stage where students are asked to produce narratives, conversations, summaries, or descriptions of incidents or ordinary everyday happenings. The narratives and dialogs of the last five lessons of YAII are presented in Arabic script, in addition to the romanized script. This, being of interest to students already familiar with the Arabic script, will enhance the naturalness of the narratives and dialogs. An adequate pronunciation key and introduction to the Arabic script is given, as none exist for Yemeni Arabic.

The romanization system, the symbols, and abbreviations used in YAII are the same as those used in YAI. Since there is enough detail in the table of contents, it was felt that there was no need for an index of grammatical terms.

U N I T 4 1

REVIEW
(Units 32-36)

Drill 1 Question--Answer

1. maa 'ismak ?
2. 'ant mutazawwij ?
3. mata tazawwajt ?
4. 9indak 'awlaad ?
5. 'al-'usra haana ?
6. 'ayn ta9mal ?
7. ʃtaGalt fi s-su9uudiyya ?
8. darrast fi l-jaami9a ?
9. 'ayʃ darrast ?
10. ʃtarayt sayyaara ?
11. kunt fi 'amriika ?
12. mata riji9t San9a ?
13. kayf al-jaww haana ?
14. maa l-ak ? mariiḍ ?

Drill 2 Transformation: perfect → imperfect

1. daxalt w-xarajt min nafs al-makaan.
2. riji9 w-9imil fi wazaarat az-ziraa9a.
3. gaddamt Talab w-HaSSalt ziyaada fil-ma9aaʃ.
4. saafaru 'ila 'amriika kull ʃahr fi S-Sayf.
5. 'al-bank Gallag as-saa9a waaHida ba9d aḍ-ḍuhr.
6. darrasat 'ilgiliizi fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
7. maa liʃ ? 'anti kunti maariḍa 'ams ?
8. 'axaðt ad-dawaa' w-ragadt Tuul al-layl.
9. ma ʃtaraaʃ ad-dawaa'. gaal 'inna kaan Gaali.
10. 'anti bigiiti haana kam sana ?
11. gaabalna l-mudiir w-l-mudiir saa9adna.
12. 'iða waafag al-mudiir 9ala T-Talab saafart ma9aakum.
13. nawwar aLLa galbak w-9aafaak!
14. daxal w-Hayya 'ahla w-ba9da sallam 9alayhum.
15. tasallaf fuluus w-tazawwaj bint 9amma ba9d sana.

Drill 3 Transformation: singular → plural

1. ʃtarayt Samiiz w-Hiδa w-Sandal min as-suug 'ams.
2. sa'al su-aal w-ma HaSSalʃ jawaab.
3. 'as-safiir w-l-gunSul fi wazaarat al-xaarijiyya.
4. 'al-kuut w-d-dajla w-S-SummaaTa fi d-duulaab.
5. 'sir saani w-liff 9ala yaddak al-yamiin!
6. 'aT-Talab waafag 9alayh al-mudiir.
7. haaδi l-gubba9a Haaliya bass Gaaliya gawi. ma 'agdarʃ 'aʃtariiha.
8. ʃtarat bluuz w-fustaan w-gundara min faransa.
9. 'iδa 'ant maaʃ mista9jil 'imʃi dala dala!
10. 'iδa hiy jaawi9a laazim 9alayha ta'kul ma9aana.

Drill 4 Give the plurals of the following nouns:

faaniila	9imaama	ʃibʃib	bluuz	galb
rukn	Haara	9iid	dagiiga	rijl
maydaan	daar	gism	Hakiim	maani9
dawaa'	hindi	'amriiki	ruusi	binaaya
mara	banTaloon	daa'ira	9aaTiʃ	taa9ib

Drill 5 Transformation: statement → question

1. maktab al-bariid 9ind ar-rukn fi t-taHriir.
2. 'ana mariiδ w-9indi Humma.
3. tiʃti tiʃtari bluuz w-fustaan.
4. 'as-safaara 9ind ad-daa'ira r-raabi9a.
5. 'al-gunSuliyya ba9iida tagriib xamsa miil min haana.
6. ma gadartʃ 'attaSil bih 9ala sibb at-talafoon kaan mu9aTTal.
7. ma kaanʃ 9indi sayyaara. ruHt hownaak b-r-rijl.
8. laagayt muʃkila kabiira fi l-xuruuj.
9. maaʃi. 'as-su9uudiyya ʃamaal al-yaman.
10. na9am. 'al-gunSuliyya daaxil as-safaara.
11. 'i9jabni l-film allaδi 'absarta 'ams al-9aʃi.
12. tasallaf fuluus 9ala sibb yiʃti yitzawwaj.

13. sta9malt sayyaarat al-maktab yawmayn.
14. 'al-yawm 9uTla. mGalligiin.
15. nisi yitfaagad as-saliiT w-l-baTaarya.

Drill 6 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. tamm 9amala w-saar.
2. nawwar aLLaah galbak!
3. 'ant sa'alt su'aal?
4. sir saani!
5. liff yasaar!
6. Hatt fuluusa fi l-bank.
7. Hattu l-kutub fi ʃ-ʃimiiT.
8. huw 9irif al-muʃkila.
9. HaSSalu munHa w-saafaru.
10. 'i9jabhum al-film.
11. tafaḍḍal 'is'al!
12. laagu maʃaakil fi l-9amal.
13. 'iða 'ant jaawi9 kul.
14. ragad ba9d al-Gadaa'.
15. yixazzin yawmiya.
16. jaawabta 'ams.
17. 9a-yirja9u Gudwa S-SubH.
18. maa lak? fiik Humma ?
19. tazawwjt bint xaali.
20. ʃtaru malaabis.

Drill 7 Completion

'ana ma 9irift ... 'I did not know ..."

1. at what time he was coming
2. when he closed the door and went home
3. when you (f.) submitted a request for an increase
4. where they (f.) went to eat dinner
5. where the American Embassy was
6. where to go to have Yemeni coffee
7. how to change the oil and check the tires
8. how he could study and work full time every day
9. whether to turn left or right at the end of the street
10. whether she was ill or busy last week
11. whether the Post Office was in Tahrir Square or in Zubairi Street
12. that the stores would be closed tomorrow
13. that they (f.) wanted to study Arabic at the Institute
14. that the Minister of Education ws out of town

15. why he did not give me an increment last year
16. why she did not stay at home and helped her mother

Drill 8 Give the word or phrse that suggests an opposite meaning of each of the following:

1.	daaxil	daxal	guddaam	naʕiif	gaSiir
	ware	ʃamaal	ʃarg	yamiin	Tawiil
	kabiir	galiil	taa9ib	Gani	samiin
	ba9iid	Haali	9aagil	jadiid	mumtaaz

2. HaTT fuluus fi' l-bank laff 9ala l-yasaar
ʃamaal ʃarg januub Garb
xalf al-wazaara b-r-rijl

Drill 9 Give a word or phrase that suggests a similar meaning to each of the following.

manzuul	yasaar	'amaam	'usra	malaabis
Hiʤa	ware	Hakiim	maaʃi	maabiʃ
fuuTa	xuTi	zukaam	baarid	raTib

Drill 10 Transformation: positive ↔ negative

1. Hayyayt jamaa9ati w-sallamt 9alyhum.
2. tiʃti tisaafir w-tudrus xaarij al-yaman.
3. sta9malna s-sayyaara 'usbuu9ayn.
4. 'iHna mudarrisiin min miSr.
5. haaʤi S-SummaaTa min al-yaman.
6. haaʤawlaak al-mu9allimiin yamaniyyiin.
7. haaʤawlaa'ʃ umzaan min faransa.
8. hiy tiʃtaGil fi l-'iʤaa9a fi San9a.
9. 'ant tigdar tiʃtari sayyaara ?
10. tasallaft fuluus w-tazawwajt.
11. HuTTi fuluusiʃ fi l-bank 'aHsan liʃ.

12. darrasayn tarbiya fi jaami9at San9a.
13. 'antayn 'axaʕtayn munHa 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma ?
14. Galligi al-baab law samaHti!
15. 'al-mudiir 9a-ywaafig 9ala Talabi.
16. tfaagad al-9ijiil w-baddil as-saliiT!
17. 'al-jaww Hama w-miGbir al-yawm.
18. liff 9ala l-yamiin haakaʕa!

Drill 11 Variable Substitution

ʃtara ʃamiiz. 'He bought a shirt.'

1. hum	9. building	17. 'antu
2. shirts	10. huw	18. overcoats
3. shoes	11. sandals	19. hats
4. 'ana	12. pants	20. head dresses
5. coat	13. negative	21. hin
6. coats	14. T-shirt	22. blouses
7. 'iHna	15. 'ant	23. dresses
8. clothes	16. question	24. clothes

Drill 12 Translation

1. Welcome back! Praise be to God for a safe return! I have not seen you for ten years.
2. She got a government scholarship and travelled to England.
3. This store is closed today. I went and bought clothes and shoes for my family in another store.
4. After they returned, they got married and worked for the Ministry of Agriculture in Ibb.
5. I liked the director of the Department of Health: I met him after I had submitted an application for the new job; he approved the application and helped me a great deal.
6. Before he checked the oil, he changed the tires.

7. If you are not in a hurry, you can go there on foot. The office is in the building in front of the Immigration (passports) Department.
8. If your car is out of order, take my car and use it for a week; I am not in need of it.
9. She was very ill yesterday; she went to the doctor and he prescribed some medicine for her; she took (used) it and slept throughout the whole night. She had a cold.
10. He backed up, went straight for about five kilometers and turned left at the second circle in the Airport Road.

U N I T 4 2

REVIEW
(Units 37-40)

Drill 1 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

1. 'an-naas haana yiHtafilu b-l-9iid θalaaθat 'ayyaam.
2. Sallayna w-9ayyadna 9ala 'ahlana 'ams.
3. gara' al-gur'aan fi l-masjid w-ba9da Salla.
4. 'an-naas fi l-9iid yzuuru 'ahlahum w-ysiiru al-Hadaa'ig al-9aamma.
5. 'arsalat Tard 'ila 'amriika w-kallafha miiteen riyaal.
6. 'ar-risaala 'ila s-su9uudiyya tiwSal ba9d yawmayn.
7. ʃaal aS-Sanduug w-HaTTa 9ala l-miizaan.
8. yiʃti yisajjil aT-Tard w-yirsila jawwi.
9. HaTT aT-Tard 9ala lmiizaan w-wazana.
10. tiʃti tiGsil θiyaabah w-tkawwiihum.
11. xallaa y9idd al-malaabis w-ysajjilhum.
12. hiy tnaʕʕif w-tkaanis al-bayt kull yawm.
13. yiʃti yaxlis θiyaaba w-yitHammam gablima ysiir aʃ-ʃuGl.
14. 'al-Hamaami falat min yaddi w-Taar.
15. ma yinfa9ak Gayr 'agribaa'ak w-z-zalaT allaði ma9aak.

Drill 2 Substitution

9iid al-miilaad Gudwa. 'Christmas is tomorrow.'

1. New Year's Day
2. May Day
3. Prophet's Birthday
4. Ramadhan Feast
5. Sacrifice Feast
6. Arbor Day
7. Mother Day
8. Christmas

Drill 3 Transformation: singular → plural

1. saar maktab al-bariid w-'arsal risaala w-Tard w-Sanduug.
2. ʃtarayt kaawiya w-maknis w-TarHa w-millaaya.
3. 'al-manʃafa w-l-millaaya w-l-fuuTa fi l-kabat.
4. 'an-naas ysiiru l-muntazah w-l-Hadiiga fi al-9iid.
5. bih kaniisa w-jaami9 w-masjid haana.
6. huw 9aamil yaʃtaGil fi l-bustaan.
7. 'ar-risaala 'arasalatha jawwiyya walaakin aT-Tard 'arsalata b-l-baHr 9ala sibb yikallif kaθiir.
8. HaTT θiyaaba fi kiis w-'axaðhum 'ila l-Gassaala.
9. 9indana fi l-bayt HiSaan w-kalb bass maabiʃ dimm.
10. mursil ar-risaala ma katabʃ 9inwaana 'aw Sanduug bariida.

Drill 4 Double Substitution

saafarna fi 9iid al-miilaad. 'We travelled on Christmas Day.'

1. we came -- New Year's Day
2. they prayed -- Prophet's Birthday
3. I read Quran -- Sacrifice Feast
4. you (m.s.) sent a telegram -- Ramadhan Feast
5. she came to Yemen -- May Day
6. I worked -- Arbor Day
7. we celebrated the feast -- Sacrifice Feast
8. you (f.s.) visited your folks -- Ramadhan Feast
9. they (m.) did not work -- Christmas Day
10. did you (f.p.) arrive -- New Year's Day ?

Drill 5 Combination

xalas θiyaaba. taHammam. 'He took off his clothes. He took a bath.'

xalas θiyaaba gablima taHammam.
'He took off his clothes before he took a bath.'

1. We prayed. We celebrated the feast with our folks.
2. We read Quran. We prayed.
3. Did you (f.s.) take a bath? Did you pray?
4. I washed my clothes. I ironed them.
5. They worked in Saudi Arabia. They worked in Yemen.
6. She studied at the women's teacher training college. She studied at Sanaa University.
7. He counted his shirts. He gave them to the laundry.
8. I opened the door. He entered the building.
9. She saw the director. She saw the minister.
10. Did they benefit their folks? They returned to Yemen.
11. He wshed his hands. He ate lamb.
12. They chewed qat. They ate dinner.
13. The plane took off. I arrived at the airport.
14. He weighed the parcel. He bought stamps.

Drill 6 Question -- Answer

1. 9ayyadt 9ala 'ahlak w-'aSdigaa'ak fi 9iid ramaḍaan ?
2. zurti l-jaami9 al-kabiir w-Sallayti hownaak ?
3. 'ayn taGsil θiyaabak ? 'ayn tkawwiihum ? 9indak Gassaala fi l-bayt ?
4. mata taguul: "kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr ?"
5. man yaguul: "aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alayna b-l-xayr w-l-masarraat" ?
6. kam yawm 9uTlat 9iid al-'aḍHa fi l-yaman ?
7. kam yawm 9uTlat 9iid ramaḍaan fi l-yaman ?
8. kam 9iid 9indakum fi 'amriika ?
9. 'an-naas yiHtafilu b-mawlid an-nabi fi l-yaman ?
10. kayf yiHtafilu n-naas fi l-'a9yaad fi l-yaman ?
11. fii muntazahaat w-Hadaa'ig 9aamma fi l-yaman ?
12. 9iid ra's as-sana ba9d kam yawm min 9iid al-miilaad ?
13. mata wuSult al-jaami9a ? sajjalt ?
14. 9addayt fuluusak gablima xarajt min al-bank ?
15. maa 9inwaanak ? 9indak Sanduug bariid ?

Drill 7 Transformation: singular → plural

Give the plurals of the following nouns:

9aam	9iid	nabi	9aamil	ʃijara
masjid	jaami9	Hadiiga	Tifl	Hafla
kaniisa	risaala	9inwaan	kiis	baHr
ʃaraab	maknis	jaar	diik	Himaar
9ayn	miil	wagt	dimm	kalb

Drill 8 Transformation: statement → question

1. Htafalna b-l-9iid muddat xamsat 'ayyaam.
2. Sallu fi l-jaami9 al-kabiir w-gara'u gur'aan.
3. 9iid ramaḍaan ba9d siTTa9ʃar yawm.
4. 9iid aθ-θawra fi sitta w-9iʃriin September.
5. 9iid al-9ummaal fi 'awwal ʃahr xamsa.
6. 9iid ra's as-sana ba9d 9iid al-miilaad b-'usbuu9.
7. Hadiigat mustaʃfa θ-θawra min al-Hadaa'ig al-9aama fi San9a.
8. Hadiigat al-'aTfaal fi San9a.
9. 'arsalt risaala w-Tard la-'amriika.
10. maktab aT-Turuud 9ala T-TarHa θ-θaaniya.
11. 'aT-Tard w-S-Sanduug kallafuuni xamsa w-sittiin riyaal.
12. na9am. 9addayt al-fuluus w-sajjaltahum.
13. maaʃi. ji't haana yawm ar-rabuu9.
14. sirt saani Hawaali xamsiin mitr gablima laffayt yamiin.
15. 'az-zalaT txarrij al-jinn mrabbaTiin.
16. 'al-Hamaami falat min yaddi w-Taar.

Drill 9 Transformation: positive → negative

1. Htafalna b-l-9iid ams.
2. 'uxti kannasat al-bayt w-naḍḍafata.
3. xalas θiyaaba w-taHammam gabl aS-SabuuH.
4. yiʃti yiʃtari Saabuun w-fuuTa w-millaaya.

5. tiʃti tirsil aT-Tard w-S-Sanduug b-l-baHr.
6. haaða sirr bayni w-baynak.
7. ʃilli S-Sanduug w-HuTTii 9ala l-miizaan.
8. 9ayyadu 9ala 'agribaa'ahum ba9d Salaat al-9iid.
9. 'an-naas fi l-yaman yiHtafilu b-9iid al-miilaad.
10. mursil ar-risaala ma lah 9inwaan wala Sanduug bariid.
11. ʃtarayna baTTaaniyaat w-ʃaraabaat nisaa'iyya.
12. tigdari taGsili θiyaabiʃ w-tkawwiihum haana fi l-bayt.
13. 'al-manaaʃif w-l-fuwaT w-l-millaayaat fi d-duulaab.
14. 'ant tigdar tasuug as-sayyaara fi haaða ʃ-ʃaari9.

Drill 10 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr!
2. iʃtaGil w-'infa9 'ahlak w-baladak!
3. Sabbin aθ-θiyaab w-kawwiihum fi l-bayt haana.
4. laa yinfa9ak ma ma9 'axuuk wala siraaja yṣii'-lak.
5. laa traajim an-naas w-baytak min zujaaj!
6. xalas θiyaaba w-taHammam gabl al-9aʃaa'.
7. xalla s-sayyaara fi l-warʃa 9ala sibb kaanat xarbaana.
8. baarak aLLa fiik! ta9aal haana!
9. raa9u ʃwayya! ta9aalu ba9d Gudwa yawm ar-rabuu9.
10. 9addu fuluusahum gablima xaraju min al-bank.
11. jaarak al-ba9iid wala 'axuuk al-ba9iid.
12. man taGadda b-kiðba ma ta9aʃʃa b-ha.
13. yigra' al-gur'aan yawmiya fi l-bayt gablima yuxruj.
14. yiʃti yaʃiil aT-Tard w-yHuTTa 9ala l-miizaan.
15. 9a-yiwSalu Gudwa S-SubH saa9at tisi9.

Drill 11 Translation

1. The truth will out. Fair without and foul within. Beauty is only skin-deep.
2. Don't buy a new house until you have checked the neighbors.
3. The pigeon flew away after it had been released from my hand.

4. Do you have proverbs about animals, such as dogs, cats, birds, and horses? We have many in Arabic.
5. She returned from pilgrimage and celebrated the Ramadhan Feast with her folks and friends.
6. Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones.
7. If it is released from my hand, it will fly away.
8. I would have told him if I had seen him at the party.
9. The girls who came are my sisters.
10. The building (which is) on your right is the Passports Department.
11. Too many cooks spoil the broth. Depend on yourself!
12. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
13. If she went to the laundromat, I would go with her.
14. If we had worked in Saudi Arabia, we would have benefited our relatives and our country.
15. The first step is always the hardest. Depend on yourself!

U N I T 4 3

I. TEXT

fi l-9iyaada

'ad-daktoor: maa lak? maa huw allaði tiʃtki minna?
Hasan: 'ana mazkuum w-fiini Sudaa9 w-'alam fi l-baTn.
'ad-daktoor: tnaffas! 'iftaH famak w-xarrij lisaanak! b-tijiik Humma? 9indak 'imsaak?
Hasan: b-tijiini Humma fi l-layl bass. maabiʃ 'imsaak. 9indi 'ishaal.
'ad-daktoor: 'ant ma gad muriʂtʃ min 'awwal?
Hasan: muriʂt w-sirt Tabiib θaani w-haaði huw 'al-9ilaaj allaði 'axaðta minna w-sta9malta. ma stafaadaytʃ kaθiir min al-9ilaaj.
'ad-daktoor: Tayyib. xuð haaði r-raʃada w-ʃtari id-dawaa' min aS-Saydaliyya llaði fi 'aaxir aʃ-ʃaari9. haaða al-9ilaaj 9a-yifiidak.
Hasan: baarak aLLa fiik ya daktoor!
'ad-daktoor: 'ibga fi l-bayt yawmayn!
Hasan: taHt 'amrak! 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
'ad-daktoor: w-9alaykum 'as-salaam. 'aLLa yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik!

II. TRANSLATION

At the Clinic

Doctor: What's wrong with you? What is it that you complain of?
Hasan: I have a cold, a headache and a pain in the stomach.
Doctor: Breathe! Open your mouth and stick your tongue out! Do you have fever? Are you constipated?
Hasan: I have fever only at night. There is no constipation. I have diarrhea.
Doctor: Haven't you been ill before?

Hasan: I was ill; I went to another doctor and this is the medicine which I have taken from him and used. I did not benefit much from the medicine.

Doctor: All right! Take this prescription and buy the medicine from the pharmacy (that is) at the end of the street! This medicine will benefit you.

Hasan: God bless you, doctor!

Doctor: Stay at home for two days!

Hasan: Yes, sir! Peace be upon you!

Doctor: Peace be upon you. God heal you and restore good health to you!

III. VOCABULARY

9iyaada	(-aat) clinic, infirmary
ʃtka (min)	(yistki) to complain (of) s.o. or s.th.
Sudaa9	v.n. headache
'alam	('aalaam) pain, ache. syn. waja9 p. 'awjaa9
baTn	(buTuun) belly, stomach
tanaffas	(yitnaffas) to breathe
fam	('afmaam) mouth
lisaan	('alsun) tongue
'imsaak	v.n. constipation. opp. 'ishaal
'ishaal	v.n. diarrhea. opp. 'imsaak
muriʂ	(yamraʂ) to be, become sick
9ilaaj	(-aat) medicine; remedy. syn. dawaa' p. 'adwiya
stafaad (min)	(yistafiid) to benefit (from)
raʃada	(-aat) prescription
Saydaliyya	pharmacy
'aaxir	(with foll. noun or suff.) at the end of
faad	(yfiid) to benefit, be of use to s.o.
taHt 'amrak!	at your service, at your disposal

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

sinn	('asnaan) tooth
daktoor 'anaan	(dakaatirat 'asnaan) dentist
waja9 'asnaan	toothache
ʕahr	(ʕuhuur) back, one's back
'iðn	('aaðaan) ear (f.)
fagr damm	anaemia
waʃʃ	(wujuuh) face
nuxra	(-aat) nose
ragaba	(-aat, rgaab) neck
'uSbu9	('aSaabi9) finger
'uSbu9 rijl	('aSaabi9 rijl) toe
saa9id	(sawaa9id) arm
faxð	('afxaað) thigh
Saydali	(Sayaadila) pharmacist

V. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

1. Relative Clauses

In UNIT 40 we had examples of relative clauses in which the subject of the verb was the same as the antecedent. In this UNIT we have the other two types of relative clauses. Note the following examples:

haaða d-dawaa' allaði ʃtarayta.
'This is the medicine (which) I bought.'

haaði l-binaaya llaði ʃtaraytha.
'This is the building (which) I bought.'

haaðawla l-banaat allaði 'absarthin.
'These are the girls (whom) I saw.'

In all of the sentences above the antecedents of the relative clauses, i.e., 'ad-dawaa', 'al-binaaya, and 'al-banaat are objects of the verbs starayt 'I bought' and 'absart 'I saw'. If this is the case, then the verb in the relative clause should always have attached to it a suffixed pronoun referring to the antecedent and agreeing with it: -a, -ha, and -hin.

The third and last type of relative clauses in SA is the one in which the antecedent is the object of a preposition. In this case the preposition should have attached to it a suffixed pronoun referring to the antecedent. Examples:

huw allaδi ji't ma9aa. 'He is the one with whom I came.'
hum allaδi darast ma9aahum. 'They are the ones with whom I studied.'

haaδi l-jaami9a llaδi darast fiiha.
'This is the university at which I studied.'

haaδa d-daftar allaδi katabt fii.
'This is the notebook in which I wrote.'

Note that the relative pronoun 'allaδi, var. 'ali, or man at the beginning of a sentence has the meaning of 'He who ... or 'The one who ..., etc.':

man taGadda b-kiδba ma ta9aʃʃa b-ha.
Lit., "He who has lies for lunch, will not have them for dinner."
The truth will out.

'allaδi 9inda fluus yagdar yatazawwaj.
'The one who has money can get married.'

NOTES ON TEXT

1. taHt 'amrak is a very polite formula, usually said to someone of a higher position or social status. It has the meaning of 'I am at your service, I am at your disposal, etc.' It literally means, 'I am under your command.'

2. ʃafa (imperf. yiʃfi 'to cure s.o.') and 9aafa (imperf. y9aafi) 'to restore good health to s.o.' are used in connection with God in the polite formula 'aLLaah yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik! with the meaning of 'God cure you and restore good health health to you!'

VI. GRAMMAR

1. Class I Verbs

A simple verb, usually referred to a Class I, is the base-form from which all other classes or forms of this verb are derived. It is usually referred to as a triliteral verb. The other classes of the triliteral verb, i.e., Classes II-X, in SA are derived from Class I and are sometimes referred to as Derived Verbs or Derived Themes.

1.1. Sound Verbs

Most sound verbs are of two patterns, depending upon their stem vowels as will be explained later on: fa9al and fi9il. f, 9 and l throughout this study refer to the first, second and third radicals, respectively.

Examples:

fa9al:	nafa9 'to benefit s.o.'		sakan	'to live in a place'
	daras 'to study'		'axaδ	'to take'
	'akal 'to eat'		dafa9	'to pay'

fi9il:	ʃirib 'to drink'	9imil 'to make'
	riji9 'to return'	9irif 'to know'

Other verbs that do not belong to either pattern are wuSul 'to arrive', 9uTuʃ 'to be thirsty' and wugaf 'stop; to stand up'.

1.2 Weak Verbs

Weak verbs have one or more unstable or weak radicals. Weak radicals in SA are the glottal stop ' and the semivowels w and y. Weak verbs are either defective or hollow. A defective verb is here defined as one with a final weak radical. Examples:

bigi 'to stay'	maʃa 'to walk'
nisi 'to forget'	Haka 'to talk'

Hollow verbs are characterized by a medial long vowel -aa- with no radical 9; they are of three types:

A.	gaal	'to say'	zaar	'to visit'
	raaH	'to go'	Saam	'to fast'
	kaan	'to be'	gaam'	'to stand up'
	saag	'to drive'	9aad	'to return'
B.	saar	'to go; to leave'	ʃaal	'to lift, carry'
	jaa'	'to come'	faad	'to benefit s.o.'
	9aad	'to repeat'	ʂaa'	'to illumine'
C.	xaaf	'to fear'	naam	'to sleep'

It should be pointed out that naam 'to sleep' also belongs to Type A above because it has two imperfect tenses: ynuum/ynaam. ynuum is more commonly used.

1.3 Doubled Verbs

Simple doubled verbs are characterized by a final double consonant in the stem, i.e., the second and third radicals are identical.

daʃʃ	'to enter'	laff	'to turn (e.g. left)
Habb	'to kiss; to love'	HaTT	'to put'

2. Stem Vowels

2.1. Sound Verbs

Both perfect and imperfect tenses have stem vowels. The stem vowel of a triradical verb, whether in the perfect or the imperfect tense, is the vowel preceding the last radical. In MSA and most dialects of Arabic the stem vowel of the imperfect tense is predictable from the perfect tense stem vowel. In SA the predictability of the imperfect tense stem vowels is more difficult due to the past tense alternate patterns or variants, e.g., some fa9al and fi9il patterns are used almost interchangeably, e.g., falat/filit 'to be released', gidir/gadar 'to be able to', libis/labas 'to wear', nafa9/nifi9 'to benefit' 9imil/9amal'to do;to make'. However, some general remarks can be made about the formation of the imperfect tense forms. Note the following:

a. Perfect tense verbs of the fi9il type (see 1.1) form their imperfect tense verbs according to the pattern yif9al or yaf9al. An exception to this rule is the verb 9irif 'to know', the imperfect of which is yi9rif/ya9rif. Examples:

Perfect	Imperfect	Meaning
riji9	yirja9/yarja9	'to return'
gidir	yigdar/yagdar	'to be able to'

libis	yilbas/yilbis	'to wear'
li9ib	yil9ab/yal9ab	'to play'
nisi	yinsa/yansa	'to forget'
simi9	yisma9/yasma9	'to hear'
ʃirib	yiʃrab/yaʃrab	'to drink'
9imil	yi9mal/ya9mal	'to do; to make'

b. Past tense verbs with initial w- have the pattern yif9al or yuu9al for their imperfect tense verbs:

wuSul	yiwSal/yuuSal	'to arrive'
wugaf	yiwgaf/yuugaf	'to stand up'
wazan	yiwzan/yuuzan	'to weight'

It should be pointed out that instead of wugaf 'to stand up' the derived Class II verb is used: waggaf, imperfect ywaggif.

2.2. Weak Verbs

1. Defective verbs

Class I defective verbs have two imperfect stems: -f9a- and -f9i-. The imperfect prefix is either ya- or yi-. The paradigm below gives the inflection of the imperfect of both kinds of defective verbs.

Perfect	Imperfect	Meaning
bigi	yibga	'he stays'
bigu	yibgu	'they (m.) stay'
bigyat	tibga	'she stays'
bigiyayn	yibgayayn	'they (f.) stay'
bigiit	tibga	'you (m.s.) stay'
bigiitu	tibgu	'you (m.p.) stay'
bigiiti	tibgi	'you (f.s.) stay'
bigiitayn	tibgayayn	'you (f.p.) stay'

bigiit	'abga	'I stay'
bigiina	nibga	'we stay'
maʃa	yamʃi	'he walks'
maʃu	yamʃu	'they (m.) walk'
maʃat	tamʃi	'she walks'
maʃayn	yamʃiyayn	'they (f.) walk'
maʃiit	tamʃi	'you (m.s.) walk'
maʃiitu	tamʃu	'you (m.p.) walk'
maʃiiti	tamʃi	'you (f.s.) walk'
maʃiitayn	tamʃiyayn	'you (f.p.) walk'
maʃiit	'amʃi	'I walk'
maʃiina	namʃi	'we walk'

2. Hollow verbs

Class I hollow verbs have three imperfect stem patterns: -fuul- -fiil-, and -faal-. Examples:

Pattern I: -fuul: gaal 'to say' yguul 'he says'

yguul	'he says'	yguulu	'they (m.) say'
tguul	'she says'	yguulayn	'they (f.) say'
tguul	'you (m.s.) say'	tguulu	'you (m.p.) say'
tguuli	'you (f.s.) say'	tguulayn	'you (f.p.) say'
'aguul	'I say'	nguul	'we say'

Other verbs that belong to this category are: kaan 'to be', saag 'to drive', zaar 'to visit', naam 'to sleep' and raaH 'to go'.

Pattern II: -fiil-: Taar 'to fly' yTiir 'he flies'

yTiir	'he flies'	yTiiru	'they (m.) fly'
TTiir	'she flies'	yTiirayn	'they (f.) fly'
TTiir	'you (m.s.) fly'	TTiiru	'you (m.p.) fly'

TTiiri	'you (f.s.) fly'	TTiirayn	'you (f.p.) fly'
'aTiir	'I fly'	nTiir	'we fly'

Other verbs that belong to this category are jaa' 'to come', 9aad 'to repeat', jaab 'to bring', ʃaal 'to lift', and ʕaa' 'to illumine'.

Pattern III: -faal-: xaaf 'to fear, be afraid'

yxaaf	'he fears'	yxaafu	'they (m.) fear'
txaaf	'she fears'	yxaafayn	'they (f.) fear'
txaaf	'you (m.s.) fear'	txaafu	'you (m.p.) fear'
txaafi	'you (f.s.) fear'	txaafayn	'you (f.p.) fear'
'axaaf	'I fear'	nxaaf	'we fear'

Another verb that belong to this category is naam 'to sleep' - ynaam/ynuum 'he sleeps'.

3. Doubled verbs

Doubled verbs of Class I have two imperfect stem vowels: -i- or -u-. Below are the imperfect forms of the verbs ʃall yʃill 'to carry away; to steal' and HaTT yHuTT 'to put':

yʃill	tʃill	tʃill	tʃilli	'aʃill
yʃillu	yʃillayn	tʃillu	tʃillayn	nʃill
yHuTT	tHuTT	tHuTT	tHuTTi	'aHuTT
yHuTTu	yHuTTayn	tHuTTu	tHuTTayn	nHuTT

Other verbs that have the same imperfect stem as ʃall are:

laff	yliff	'to turn (e.g.) left'
tamm	ytimm	'to complete, finish'
9add	y9idd	'to count, enumerate'

Other verbs that have the imperfect stem as HaTT are:

jarr	yjurr	'to withdraw (e.g.) money'
saHH	ySuHH	'to be all right; to be permissible'

The imperative of Class I verbs will be dealt with in UNIT 44.

VII. DRILLS

Drill 1: Question -- Answer (Substitution)

S_1 : maa lak? maa huw allaðí tiʃtki minna?
'What's wrong with you? What is it that you complain of?'
T : headache
S_2 : 9indi Sudaa9. 'I have a headache.'

1. fever
2. cold
3. toothache
4. stomachache
5. backache
6. pain in the mouth
7. constipation
8. pain in the fingers
9. pain in the neck
10. constipation
11. pain in the ear
12. anaemia
13. pain in the nose
14. pain in the neck
15. pain in the arm
16. pain in the foot

Drill 2: Variable Substitution

muriʕ w-saar aT-Tabiib. 'He was ill and went to the doctor.'

1. 'ana
2. 'ant
3. 'al-mustaʃfa
4. 'anti
5. 'al-9iyaada
6. huw
7. hiy
8. 'aT-Tabiib
9. 'ana
10. 'antu
11. 'antayn
12. 'al-9iyaada
13. hin
14. hum
15. 'iHna

Drill 3 Conjugation -- Repetition

1. huw ma gad muriʂʃ min 'awwal.
2. hum ma gad muriʂuuʃ min 'awwal.
3. hiy ma gad muriʂuuʃ min 'awwal.
4. hin ma gad murʂayn min 'awwal.
5. 'ant ma gad muriʂtʃ min 'awwal.
6. 'antu ma gad muriʂtuuʃ min 'awwal.
7. 'anti ma gad muriʂtiiʃ min 'awwal.
8. 'antayn ma gad muriʂtayn min 'awwal.
9. 'ana ma gad muriʂtʃ min 'awwal.
10. 'iHna ma gad muriʂnaaʃ min 'awwal.

Drill 4 Double Substitution

T : medicine -- benefited me
S : haaða huw ad-dawaa' allaði faadani.
'This is the medicine that benefited me.'

1. teacher -- taught me
2. medicine -- benefited her
3. doctor -- examined me
4. pharmacist -- wrote it
5. pharmacy -- in this street
6. work -- benefited us
7. mechanic -- checked the car
8. airplaine -- arrived now
9. neighbor -- helped them
10. friend -- came with me

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

'axað ar-raʃada w-ʃtara d-dawaa' min aS-Saydaliyya.
'He took the prescription and bought the medicine at the pharmacy.'

1. 'ana
2. hiy
3. 'al-9iyaada
6. 'anti
7. 'al-mustaʃfa
8. 'antu
11. 'aS-Saydaliyya
12. hin
13. 'anti

4. hum	9. 'iHna	14. ʿantayn
5. 'ant	10. huw	15. 'ana

Drill 6 Combination

haaδa dawaa'. ʃtarayt 'ad-dawaa' min aS-Saydaliyya. →
haaδa d-dawaa' allaδi ʃtarayta min aS-Saydaliyya.

'This is medicine. I bought the medicine from the pharmacy. →
This is the medicine which I bought at the pharmacy.'

1. haaδi 9iyaada. ruHt la-l-9iyaada 'ams.
2. haaδa mustaʃfa. 'abi ragad fi l-mustaʃfa 'usbuu9.
3. haaδa 'alam. 'ummi tiʃtki mina al-'alam.
4. haaδa 9ilaaj. 'ana stafaadayt min al-9ilaaj.
5. haaδawla Tullaab. darrast aT-Tullaab 9arabi.
6. haaδi bint. 'absart al-bint fi bayt 9ammati.
7. haaδ i ʃamTa. 'ana ʃilt aʃ-ʃamTa.
8. haaδ i sayyaara. ʃtarayna s-sayyaara b-9aʃara 'alf duulaar.
9. haaδa safiir. 'absart as-safiir fi l-Hafla.
10. haaδi gunSuliyya. gaddamna Talab 9amal fi l-gunSuliyya.
11. haaδa baab. daxalt min al-baab.
12. haaδi jaami9a. taxarrajt min al-jaami9a.
13. haaδa su'aal. sa'alna s-su'aal fi S-Saff.
14. haaδa daftar. katab 'ismak fi d-daftar.

Drill 7 Combination

haaδa dawaa'. ʃtarayt ad-dawaa' min aS-Saydaliyya. →
haaδa dawaa' ʃtarayta min aS-Saydaliyya.
'This is medicine. I bought the medicine at the pharmacy. →
This is medicine which I bought at the pharmacy.'

Use examples from Drill 6 above.

Drill 8 Translation

1. This is the car which I bought for $5,000 last year.
2. The building which is on your right is the clinic.
3. What is the name of the street on which you lived?
4. This is the laundry in which I wash my clothes.
5. What is the name of the company from which you bought the tickets?
6. This is a problem which I do not know.
7. The book which you read is in the University Library.
8. The engineer who worked for the Ministry of Public Works left the country.
9. These are the men who entered the building.
10. The women whom you saw in the marketplace are our neighbors.
11. He who has money can get married in these days.
12. The truth will out. Lit., "He who has lies for lunch, will not have them for dinner."

Drill 9 Repetition

1. 'aLLaah yiʃfiik w-y9aafiik!
2. 'aLLaah yiʃfiiha w-y9aafiiha!
3. 'aLLaah yiʃfii w-y9aafii!
4. 'aLLaah yiʃfiihum w-y9aafiihum!
5. 'aLLaah yiʃfiikum w-y9aafiikum!
6. 'aLLaah yiʃfiis w-y9aafiiʃ!
7. 'aLLaah yiʃfiikin w-y9aafiikin!
8. 'aLLaah yiʃfiihin w-y9aafiihin!

Drill 10 Question -- Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. Hasan mariiḍ? maa huw allaði yiʃtki minna?
2. 9inda 'alam fi ḍ-ḍahr?
3. maa gaal-la T-Tabiib?
4. b-tijii Humma? f-ayy Hiin?
5. 9inda 'imsaak 'aw 'ishaal?
6. Husan muriḍ min 'awwal? raaH la-T-Tabiib?
7. stafaad Hasan min al-9ilaaj?

8. 'ayʃ 'adda T-Tabiib la-Hasan?
9. min 'ayn Hasan ʃtara d-dawaa'? min al-9iyaada?
10. 'ayn aS-Saydaliyya?
11. kam yawm laazim 9alayh Hasan yibga fi l-bayt?
12. 'ayʃ gaal Hasan la-T-Tabiib gablima saar?

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. Listen to the following passage on tape, and then indicate whether the following statements are true or false. If the statement is false, correct it.

1. 'ismaa9iil yamani min madiinat San9a.
2. fallat al-madrasa w-ʃtaGal fi garaaj.
3. 'ismaa9iil saafar 'ila 'amriika la-9ind 9amma w-fataH maHaTTat batrool.
4. 'ismaa9iil 9imil fi dikkaan 9amma xams siniin.
5. 9amm 'isma9iil fi wilaayat Michigan.
6. 'ismaa9iil HaSSal murattab naahi fi ʃarikat Ford.
7. 'ismaa9iil riji9 la-San9a w-fataH maHaTTat batrool.
8. tazawwaj 'ismaa9il bint 9amma.
9. 'ismaa9iil rajjaal naahi li'anna saa9ad 'ahla.
10. 9aa'ilat 'ismaa9iil tatakawwan min zawjata w-xamsat jahhaal: waladayn w-bintayn.

U N I T 4 4

I. TEXT

'az-zawaaj

'az-zawaaj fi l-yaman w-fi kull al-bilaad al-9arabiyya θ-θaaniya ykallif kaθiir. 'ana maθalan tazawwajt al-9aam al-maaḍi w-kallafni z-zawaaj θamaaniin 'alf riyaal yamani, ya9ni tagriib siTTa9ʃar 'alf duulaar. 'awwal ʃay' 'arsalt 'ummiw -'uxti yidawwirayn-li 9ala 9aruusa w-ba9da HaSalat muwaafagat al-'umm w-l-'ab. Sa9b al-xaTiib yiji w-yibsir xaTiibata fi 9aadaatna. θaani yawm saar 'abi w-'axi l-kabiir la bayt al-9aruusa w-xazzanu w-ttafagu 9ala l-mahr. 'al-mahr al-mutawassiT tagriib xamsiin 'alf. ba9da yHaddidu yawm az-zawaaj. gabl az-zawaaj b-'usbuu9 yiwga9 yawm an-nagʃ w-l-Hinna.

ba9d al-xuTba laylat ad-duxuul, w-9adatan yiwga9 az-zawaaj yawm al-xamiis laylat al-jum9a 'aw yawm al-'aHad laylat al-'iθnayn. yaktubu 9agd az-zawaaj ba9d al-xuTba w-allaði yaktuba huw 'al-gaaḍi 'aw 'ayy waaHid fagiih min an-naas. laylat ad-duxuul yi9malu zaffa Hagg al-Hareew w-l-Hareewa ba9d Salaat al-maGrib.

nisiit 'aguul-lak 'inna l-Hareewa w-'ahlaha yiʃtaru ð-ðahab w-l-Hilya miθl al-xawaatim w-l-'agraaT w-s-siwaaraat min al-mahr.

II. TRANSLATION

Marriage

Marriage in Yemen and in all the other Arab countries costs a lot. I, for example, got married last year and it cost me YR 80,000, i.e., about $16,000. At the very beginning I sent my mother and my sister to look for a bride for me. The parents (of the bride) agreed. It is difficult for a bridegroom to come and see his fiancee in our culture. On the second day my father and oldest brother went to the

bride's home; they chewed qat and agreed on the dowry. The average dowry is about YR 50,000. After that, they set the marriage date. One week before marriage nagʃ and henna take place.

The wedding night is after the engagement, and it usually takes place on Thursday night or Sunday night. They write the marriage contract. The one who writes it is the cadi or any other learned person among the people. On the wedding night they have a wedding procession for the bridegroom and the bride after the sunset prayer.

I forgot to tell you that the bride and her folks buy the gold and the jewelry, such as rings, earrings, and bracelets from the bridal money.

III. VOCABULARY

zawaaj	v.n. marriage; getting married
maθalan	for example
ʕaruusa	(-aat) bride. syn. Hareewa
HaSal	(yaHSul) to take place, occur
muwaafaga	v.n. agreement, approval
xaTiib	(xuTTaab) fiance, suitor
xaTiiba	(-aat) fiancee
ʕaada	(-aat) custom; habit
mahr	(muhuur) dowry, bridal money
mutawassiT	(-iin) average; middle, medium
ʷuga9	(yiwga9) to take place, occur; to fall down
nagʃ	v.n. painting; engraving
Hinna	coll. henna
xuTba	v.n. marriage engagement
duxuul	v.n. first coition in marriage
laylat ad-duxuul	wedding night
ʕaadatan	adv. usually, habitually
gaaḍi	(guḍaa) cadi, Islamic judge

fagiih	(fugahaa') learned man, one well versed in jurisprudence
zaffa	(-aat) wedding procession
Hareew	(Haraawi) bridegroom. syn. 9aruus
Hareewa	(-aat) bride. syn. 9aruusa
ðahab	coll. gold
Hilya	jewelry
xaatim	(xawaatim) finger ring
gurT	('agraaT) earring
siwaara	(-aat) bracelet

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

9urs	('a9raas) wedding; wedding ceremony
ʃarT	(ʃuruuT) condition, stipulation
xaTab	(yuxTub) to ask for a girl's hand in marriage
wugaf	(yiwgaf) to stop; to stand up
taHaaka	(yitHaaka) to speak with each other
ta9aawan	(yit9aawan) to cooperate
tagabal	(yitgaabal) to meet each other; to get together
wassax	(ywassix) to make s.th. dirty
jaddad	(yjaddid) to renew; to renovate
Sayyaf	(ySayyif) to spend the summer as holiday
xayma	(xiyaam) tent
xayyam	(yxayyim) to pitch up a tent; to camp

V. GRAMMAR

1. Class II Verbs

Class II verbs are characterized by a double middle radical. They are generally transitive and derived from Class I verbs, nouns and adjectives. If they are derived from Class I verbs, they express the

general meaning of 'to cause s.o. or s.th. to do s.th.' or 'underdo an action expressed by the Class I verb.' Examples:

Class I		Class II	
daras	'to study'	darras	'to teach'
xaraj	'to go out'	xarraj	'to send out; to expel'
9irif	'to know'	9arraf	'to acquaint s.o. with s.o.'

If the Class I verb is transitive, then the corresponding Class II verb may be doubly transitive, i.e., with two objects:

darrasni 'ingiliizi. 'He taught me English.'
rawwaahum al-bayt. 'He showed them the house.'

Some Class II verbs denote intensity or frequency of action:

kasar 'to break' kassar 'to smash'

Examples of Class II verbs formed from nouns:

xayma	'tent'	xayyam	'to camp'
Sayf	'summer'	Sayyaf	'to spend the summer as holiday'
taHiyya	'greeting'	Hayya	'to greet s.o.'
tajriba	'trial'	jarrab	'to try to do s.th.'
masaa'	'evening'	massa	'to bid s.o. good evening.'
sijill	'record'	sajjal	'to record; to register'
Saabuun	'soap'	Sabban	'to wash with soap'
Salaa	'prayer'	Salla	'to pray'
ʕayf	'guest'	ʕayyaf	'to treat s.o. as a guest'
9iid	'feast, holiday'	9ayyad	'to celebrate the feast with s.o.'

Class II verbs derived from adjectives express the general meaning of 'to cause s.th. or s.o. to acquire the quality expressed by the adjective:'

naʕiif	'clear'	naʕʕaf	'to clean'
gaSiir	'short'	gaSSar	'to shorten; to fail'
wasx	'dirty'	wassax	'to make s.th. dirty'
jadiid	'new'	jaddad	'to renew'

Examples of defective Class II verbs are:

Salla	'to pray'	warra	'to show s.o. s.th.'
Hayya	'to greet s.o.'	kawwa	'to iron'
xalla	'to leave s.th.'	malla	'to fill, fill up'

1.1 Stem Vowels

The imperfect stem vowel of verbs of Class II is -i-. The imperfect prefix is y- for the third person, t- for the second person, 'a- for the first person singular and n- for the first person plural.

2. The Imperative

The imperative is used in giving commands, i.e., in telling or asking someone or a group of people to do something, e.g., 'uktub! 'write! (m.s.)' and xuδu! 'Take! (m.p.)'. All imperatives in SA have four different forms, reflecting differences in gender and number: masculine singular, masculine plural, feminine singular, and feminine plural. Nearly all the imperative forms are formed from the imperfect stems of verbs. The masculine singular form of the imperative is the base of all the other forms which are formed by suffixing -i (f.s.), -u (m.p.), and -ayn (f.p.). Below are the forms of the imperative of the verb 'to study'. The imperfect stem is -drus-:

'udrus!	'Study (m.s.)!'
'udrusi!	'Study (f.s.)!'
'udrusu!	'Study (m.p.)!'
'udrusayn!	'Study (f.p.)!'

2.1 Sound Verbs

The following rules pertain to the formation of the masculine singular imperatives of sound verbs of Class I.

a. 'i- is usually prefixed to the imperfect stems of the patterns -f9il- and -f9al-.

Imperf. Stem	Imperative	Meaning
-Gsil-	'iGsil!	'Wash (m.s.)!'
-lbis-	'ilbis!	'Wear (m.s.)!'
-9rif-	'i9rif!	'Know (m.s.)!'
-Sbir-	'iSbir!	'Be patient (m.s.)!'
-9zim-	'i9zim!	'Invite (m.s.)!'
-ftaH-	'iftaH!	'Open (m.s.)!'
-gra'-	'igra'!	'Read (m.s.)!'
-l9ab-	'il9ab!	'Play (m.s.)!'
-rja9-	'irja9!	'Return (m.s.)'
-ʃrab-	'iʃrab!	'Drink (m.s.)!
-s'al-	'is'al!	'Ask (m.s.)!'

b. Past tense verbs with initial w- (which have the imperfect tense pattern as yif9al) have the imperative pattern as 'if9al or 'uu9al:

Imperfect		Imperative
yiwSal/yuuSal	'He reaches a place'	'iwSal/'uuSal
yiwgaf/yuugaf	'He stands up'	'iwgaf/'uugaf
yiwzan/yuuzan	'He weighs'	'iwzan/'uuzin

c. The imperative pattern of hamzated verbs is ʕul:

'akal 'to eat' → kul! 'Eat (m.s.)!'

'axaǰ 'to take' → xuǰ! 'Take (m.s.)!'

2.2 Class II

The imperative form of Class II verbs is the same as the imperfect stem of those verbs. Examples:

Gallag	'to close'	→	Gallig!
kawwa	'to iron'	→	kawwi!
warra	'to show'	→	warri!
xazzan	'to chew qat'	→	xazzin!

2.3 Weak Verbs

A. Defective

Class I

The imperative forms of Class I defective verbs have the prefix i-. Examples:

'ibga	'Stay (m.s.)!'	'ibgu	'Stay (m.p.)!"
'ibgi	'Stay (f.s.)!'	'ibgayn	'Stay (f.p.)!'
'imʃi	'Walk (m.s.)!'	'imʃu	'Walk (m.p.)!'
'imʃi	'Walk (f.s.)!'	'imʃayn	'Walk (f.p.)!'

B. Hollow

Class I

The imperative of hollow verbs that have the imperfect form as yfuul is either ful! or fuul!:

gaal 'to say' → yguul → gul!/guul!
kaan 'to be' → ykuun → kun/kuun!
saag 'to drive' → ysuug → suug!
zaar 'to visit' → yzuur → zuur!

Those that have the imperfect form as yfiil form their imperative forms as fiil:

jaab 'to bring' → yjiib → jiib!
ʃaal 'to lift' → yʃiil → ʃiil!
9aad 'to repeat' → y9iid → 9iid!

The imperative forms of naam 'to sleep' and xaaf 'to fear' are nuum! or naam! and xaaf!, respectively.

The imperative of jaa' 'to come' is ta9aal!

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

T : getting married
S : 'az-zawaaj yikallif kaθiir. 'Getting married costs a lot.'

1. house
2. engagement
3. jewelry
4. wedding
5. medicine
6. tickets
7. building
8. parcel
9. clothes
10. party
11. telegram
12. clinic
13. visa
14. telephone
15. food
16. taxi
17. qat
18. laundry

Drill 2 Transformation

T : 'az-zawaaj yikallif kaθiir. 'Marriage costs a lot.'
S : 'az-zawaaj kallaf kaθiir. 'The marriage cost a lot.'

Use sentences from Drill 1 above.

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

dawwar 9ala bayt. 'He looked for a house.'

1. 'ana	6. ðahab	11. hum
2. hin	7. hiy	12. apartment
3. bride	8. bracelets	13. 'ant
4. 'iHna	9. rings	14. 'antu
5. cadi	10. earrings	15. 'antayn

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

xazzanu w-ttafagu 9ala l-mahr. 'They chewed qat and agreed on the dowry.'

1. wedding	6. 'antu	11. perfect
2. party	7. question	12. price
3. 'iHna	8. imperfect	13. hum
4. engagement	9. marriage	14. want to
5. jewelry	10. 'iHna	15. have to

Drill 5 Substitution

wuga9 al-9urs yawm al-xamiis laylat al-jum9a.
'The marriage took place Thursday night.'

1. Friday night	6. Thursday night
2. Sunday night	7. Friday

3. Monday night
4. Tuesday night
5. Wednesday night
8. Saturday
9. Monday
10. Thursday

Drill 6 Question -- Answer (Cued)

man yaktub 9agd az-zawaaj? 'Who writes the marriage contract?'
T : cadi
S : 'al-gaaʂi yaktub 9agd az-zawaaj.
'The cadi writes the marriage contract.'

1. learned man
2. minister
3. director
4. minister
5. cadi
6. learned man
7. doctor
8. pharmacist
9. cadi

Drill 7 Double Substitution

'al-Hareewa tiʃtari ð-ðahab. 'The bride buys the gold.

1. bridegroom -- clothes
2. bridegroom -- jewelry
3. bride -- bracelets
4. bride -- earring
5. bridegroom -- rings
6. doctor -- pharmacy
7. man -- qat
8. people -- gold
9. minister -- building
10. students -- books

Drill 8 Triple Substitution

T : hum -- sunset prayer -- home
Sallu Salaat al-maGrib fi l-bayt

1. 'iHna -- morning prayer -- mosque
2. 'ana -- noon prayer -- Grand Mosque
3. hum -- Feast prayer -- Grand Mosque
4. 'antu -- sunset prayer -- shop

5. hin -- afternoon prayer -- home
6. huw -- noon prayer -- road
7. 'iHna -- sunset prayer -- mosque
8. 'anti -- noon prayer -- university
9. hum -- morning prayer -- home
10. 'iHna -- Feast prayer -- Grand Mosque

Drill 9 Combination

Examples:

1. 'absart film 9arabi. 'ism al-film "laylat ad-duxuul". →
   'absart film 9arabi 'isma "laylat ad-duxuul."
   'I saw an Arabic movie. The name of the movie is "The Wedding Night." →
   I saw an Arabic film whose name is "The Wedding Night".'

2. jaa'at bint. 9uyuun al-bint naahiya. →
   jaa'at bint 9uyuunha naahiya.
   'A girl came. The girl's eyes are beautiful. →
   A girl whose eyes are beautiful came.'

1. xaTabt bint. 'abu l-bint w-'ummaha min San 9a.
2. 'abi rajjaal. 9umr 'abi xamsiin sana.
3. dawwart 9ala kitaab. 'ism al-kitaab "taariix San9a l-gadiima."
4. ʃtara sayyaara. si9r as-sayyaara 'arba9iin 'alf ryaal.
5. 'absart rajjaal. Tuul ar-rajjaal mitrayn w-nuSS.
6. naamu fi fundug. 'ism al-fundug "daar al-Humd".
7. ta9aʃʃayna fi maT9am. SaaHib al-maT9am min lubnaan.
8. sakant fi bayt. 'iijaar al-bayt 9iʃriin alf ryaal fi s-sana.
9. ʃtarayn sayyaara. lawn as-sayyaara 'aHmar.
10. absart bint. 9uyuun al-bint zurg.
11. sirt la-Tabiib. 9iyaadat aT-Tabiib gariiba min haana.
12. 'arsalt Tard. wazn aT-Tard xamsa kiilo.

13. 'absart bintayn. 'abu l-bintayn jaarana.
14. 9indana jiiraan. 'awlaad al-jiiraan kaθiiriin.

Drill 10 Translation

1. This is the bride who got married last night.
2. I do not know the man who came.
3. Who is the fiance who paid this high dowry?
4. The house which I bought cost me $60,000.
5. The coffee which you drank was Yemeni coffee.
6. The girl whom I came with is my fiancee.
7. The house in which we chewed qat had four floors.
8. This is the school from which I graduated last year.
9. I went to an embassy whose employees are all Egyptian.
10. Do you want to see the house which I had talked to you about?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. saalim : ha! mata tazawwajt ya 9aTa?
   9aTa : 'al-'usbuu9 al-maaḍi.
   saalim : kay kaan al-9urs?
   9aTa : naahi kaθiir. 9imilna Haflat 9aʃaa' w-sirna Sallayna al-9iʃaa' fi l-jaami9 al-kabiir w-9imlu-li zaffa min al-jaami9a 'ila l-bayt.
   saalim : w-al-mahr kam kaan?
   9aTa : 'al-mahr laa tas'al 9anna! kallafni z-zawaaj kaθiir bass haaδi 9aada min 9aadaatana.
   saalim : mabruuk! ("Congratulations!"). nʃaaLLa l-'awlaad 9ala T-Tariig!

2. zahra : Hayya LLaah man jaa'! al-Hinna w-n-nagʃ! mata tazawwajti ya kariima!
   kariima : 'al-xamiis al-maaḍi laylat al-jum9a.
   zahra : w-l-Hareew 'ayʃ 'addaa-liʃ?

kariima : 'addaa-li xaatim w-'agraaT w-siwaaraat ðahab.
zahra : min 'ayn ʃtaraytu ð-ðahab w-l-Hilya?
kariima : min suug að-ðahab.
zahra : w-θ-θiyaab?
kariima : min as-suug al-jadiid. sirna 'ana w-'ummi w'axawaati w-Sadiigaati.

U N I T 4 5

I. TEXT

'al-'aʃGaal

maHmuud: ya 'ax yaHya 'aʃtiik tixbirni 9an ʃee'.

yaHya: tafaḍḍal! 'ana musta9idd, 9ala ra'si w-9ayni.

maHmuud: ðalHiin Saarat al-yaman balad kabiira w-fiiha 'a9maal kaθiir.

yaHya: na9am SaHiiH.

maHmuud: 'aʃtiik tixbirni 9an al-'aʃGaal al-mawjuuda haana law samaHt.

yaHya: bih 9ammaar w-9aTTaar w-farraan w-xabbaaz w-muzayyin 'aw Hallaag w-najjaar w-taajir w-bayyaa9-miʃtari .....

maHmuud: maa l-farg bayn al-9ammar w-ʃ-ʃaagi?

yaHya: 'al-9ammaar huw al-mas'uul 9an al-buyuut w-l-binaayaat w-ʃ-ʃaagi huw al-9aamil allaði yiʃtaGil b-yadda.

maHmuud: w-l-Hallaag w-l-muzayyin?

yaHya: maabiʃ farg. 'al-Hallaag yaHlig aʃ-ʃa9r w-l-muzayyin yzayyin 'aw yHassin aʃ-ʃa9r. 'al-muzayyin kalima gadiima. 'akθar an-naas yista9milu Hallaag ðalHiin.

maHmuud: tamaam! maa 9ad-bih?

yaHya: bih Tabbaa9 w-jallaab w-mixayyiT w-muhandis w-Tabiib w-mudiir . . .

maHmuud: 'ant maa 9amalak ya 'ax yaHya?

yaHya: ʃtaGalt sanatayn sawwaag w-ba9da stagalt w-daxalt al-madrasa S-Sinaa9iyya fi San9a w-ba9dima taxarrajt ʃtaGalt najjaar wazaarat al-'aʃGaal.

maHmuud: muwaffag!

II. TRANSLATION

Jobs

Mahmud: Brother Yahia! I want you to tell me about something.

Yahia: Go ahead! I am ready. (I will) willingly.

Mahmud: Now Yemen has become a big country and there are many jobs in it.

Yahia: Yes. True.

Mahmud: I want you to tell me about the jobs here, if you please.

Yahia: There are masons, perfumers, bakers, barbers, carpenters, dealers, grocers, etc.

Mahmud: What is the difference between "9ammaar" and "ʃaagi"?

Yahia: A "9ammaar" is the person responsible for houses and buildings and a "ʃaagi" is a workman who works with his hands.

Mahmud: And between "Hallaag" and "muzayyin"?

Yahia: There is no difference. A "Hallaag" cuts hair and a "muzayyin" grooms (or improves) hair. "muzayyin" is an old word. Most people use "Hallaag" nowadays.

Mahmud: Right! What else?

Yahia: There are typists, importers, tailors, engineers, doctors, managers, etc.

Mahmud: What do you do, Brother Yahia?

Yahia: I worked for two years as a driver, then I resigned and enrolled in the Vocational School in Sanaa. I graduated and worked as a carpenter for the Ministry of Public Works.

Mahmud: Good luck!

III. VOCABULARY

'axbar(9an)	(yixbir) to inform s.o. (about)
musta9idd	(-iin) ready, prepared
Saar	(ySiir) to become; (with foll. imperf.) to begin, start
SaHiiH	adj. correct, true
mawjuud	(-iin) found; available; present

bih	there is; there are. syn. fii
9aTTaar	(-iin) perfumer, chemist
farraan	(-iin) baker. syn. xabbaaz p. -iin
muzayyin	(-iin) barber. syn. Hallaag p. -iin
taajir	(tujjaar) dealer; merchant
bayyaa9-miʃtari	(-iin -yiin) shopkeeper, grocer
farg	(furuug) difference
bayn	prep. between, among
mas'uul	(-iin) person responsible for s.th. or s.o.
Halag	(yuHlug) to cut hair; to shave
ʃa9r	coll. hair. unit n. ʃa9ra
zayyan	(yzayyin) to beautify; to decorate; to shave
Hassan	(yHassin) to improve
kalima	(-aat) word
'akθar	(with foll. def. n.) most, most of the
Tabbaa9	(-iin) typist
jallaab	(-iin) importer (of goods)
mixayyiT	(-iin) tailor
stagaal	(yistagiil) to resign
Sinaa9a	v.n. industry
madrasa	(madaaris Sinaa9iyya) vocational school,
Sinaa9iyya	industrial school

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

saafar	(ysaafir) to travel
saayar	(ysaayir) to walk with s.o., engage s.o. in walking
gaatal	(ygaatil) to quarrel with s.o., engage s.o. in a quarrel
Haaka	(yHaaki) to talk with s.o., engage s.o. in conversation
kasar	(yaksir) to break s.th.
kassar	(ykassir) to break s.th. into pieces, smash
Sana9	(yaSna9) to manufacture

maSna9 (maSaani9) factory
xayyaT (yxayyiT) to sew

V. GRAMMAR

1. Class III Verbs

Class III verbs are derived mainly from Class I verbs by inserting the long vowel aa between the first and the second radicals.

xaabar	'to telephone'	saafar	'to travel'
baarak	'to bless'	gaatal	'to quarrel with s.o.'
waafag	'to agree'	saamaH	'to forgive s.o.'
Haawal	'to try'	maaʃa	'to walk with s.o.'
jaawab	'to answer'	Haaka	'to speak with s.o.'

Most Class III verbs are transitive:

xaabarni 'he telephone me, engaged me on the phone'
Haakaahum 'he spoke with them (m.), engaged them in conversation!'

A few are intransitive: saafar 'to travel', Haawal 'to try', etc. Class III verbs as a class do not have one meaning or closely related meanings associated with Class I verbs. A good number of them are "associative," i.e., they express the meaning of engaging or associating s.o. in an activity. Thus:

Class I		Class III	
saar	'to walk'	saayar	'to engage s.o. in walking'
Haka	'to talk'	Haaka	'to engage s.o. in conversation!'

1.1 The imperfect of sound verbs of Class III is regular: they are conjugated in the same way as Class II verbs, e.g., saa9ad 'to help' has the imperfect forms: ysaa9id tsaa9id 'asaa9id, etc.

The imperfect of defective Class III verbs has the stem vowel -i-:

9aafa 'to cure s.o.' → y9aafi
Haaka 'to talk to s.o.' → yHaaki
saayar 'to walk with s.o.' → ysaayir

1.2 The Imperative

The imperative forms of sound and defective Class III verbs are the same as the imperfect stems of those verbs. Examples:

Perfect	Imperfect Stem	Imperative
saafar 'to travel'	-saafir-	saafir!
gaabal 'to meet'	-gaabil-	gaabil!
xaabar 'to telephone'	-xaabir-	xaabir!

2. Class IV Verbs

Class IV verbs are not frequently used in SA. This class of verbs is characterized by the prefix 'a-, with the exception of the verb 'i9jab 'to please'. Examples:

'absar	'to see'	'akmal	'to complete'
'arsal	'to send'	'adda	'to give'

The imperfect forms of Class IV verbs are like those of Class II or Class III verbs; the subject markers take the vowel -i-, except for defective verbs:

'absar	→ yibsir	'akmal	→ yikmil
'arsal	→ yirsil	'adda	→ yi'addi

The imperative forms take the prefix 'i-:

'ibsir!	'Look!'	'ikmil!	'Complete!'
'irsil!	'Send!'	'i9jib!	'Please!'

The imperative of the defective verb 'adda 'to give' is either 'addi! or 'iddi!

3. Collective Nouns

Almost all kinds of vegetables, fruits, grains, flowers, fruit trees, grasses, etc. are collective nouns. Most units nouns are derived from collective nouns by suffixing -a, sometimes with certain stem changes. Note the following:

A. Collective Noun	Unit Noun	Meaning
bayṣ	bayṣa	'an egg'
HabHab	HabHaba	'a watermelon'
bagar	bagara	'a cow'
burtagaal	burtagaala	'an orange'
baTTiix	baTTiixa	'a cantaloupe'
TamaTiis	TumTusa	'a tomatoe'
dajaaj	dajaaja	'a chicken'
laHm	laHma	'a piece of meat'

B. Other unit nouns are formed by using Habbat 'grain, seed, a unit of', ra's 'head of' or 9uudi 'root, stalk, etc.' before the collective noun. Examples:

rizz	Habbat rizz	'a grain of rice'
9inab	Habbat 9inab	'a grape'
salaTa	ra's salaTa	'a head of lettuce'
guʃmi	ra's guʃmi	'a radish'
gaat	9uudi gaat	'a gat root'

C. Some nouns referring to animate non-human beings add the suffix -i:

Hamaam	Hamaami	'a pigeon'
gummal	gummali	'a louse'
Gurraab	Gurraabi	'a crow'
Huut	Huuti	'a fish'
9aSfar	9aSfari	'a sparrow'

The unit nouns of the above collectives are masculine; the feminine forms take the -a ending, e.g., Hamaama is a female pigeon, 9aSfar is a female sparrow, etc.

D. Some inanimate nouns take the suffix -i:

bisbaas	bisbaasi	'a hot pepper'
biibar	biibari	'a bell pepper'

It should be noted that the unit noun of dubbe 'zucchini' is dubbaaye 'a zucchini'. The unit noun kuskusi 'a puppy (m.)' and kuskusiyya 'a puppy (f.)' is from the plural kasaakis, not from *kuskus.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

'ant--'ana	'aʃtiik tixbiirni.
you (m.s.)--I	'I want you to inform me.'

1. 'ant -- hum
2. huw -- hiy
3. hiy -- 'iHna
4. 'antu -- 'ana
5. hum -- 'ant
6. 'anti -- huw
7. 'anti -- 'ana
8. huw -- hum
9. 'ant -- hiy
10. 'antu -- 'iHna
11. hum -- huw
12. hiy -- 'antu

Drill 2 Conjugation -- Repetition

1. Saar mu9allim.
2. Saaru mu9allimiin.
3. Saarat mu9allima.
4. Saarayn mu9allimaat.
5. Sirt mu9allim
6. Sirna mu9allimiin.
7. Sirt mu9allima.
8. Sirntu mu9allimiin.
9. Sirti mu9allima.
10. Sirtayn mu9allimaat.

Drill 3 Triple Substitution

'al-yaman Saarat balad kabiira
'Yemen became a big country.'

1.	teacher	--	director	--	new
2.	barber	--	mason	--	excellent
3.	apartment	--	house	--	big
4.	merchant	--	importer	--	good
5.	office	--	living room	--	clean
6.	typist	--	clerk	--	rich
7.	meat	--	expensive	--	very, a lot
8.	park	--	hospital	--	government (adj.)
9.	baker	--	driver	--	crazy
10.	riyaal	--	cheap	--	very

Drill 4 Conjugation

1. stagaal 9ala sibb yiʃti ysaafir.
2. stagaalat 9ala sibb tiʃti tsaafir.
3. stagaalu 9ala sibb yiʃtu ysaafiru.
4. stagaalayn 9ala sibb yiʃtiyayn ysaafirayn.
5. stagalt 9ala sibb tiʃti tsaafir.
6. stagalti 9ala sibb tiʃti tsaafiri.
7. stagaltu 9ala sibb tiʃtu tsaafiru.
8. stagaltayn 9ala sibb tiʃtiyayn tsaafirayn.
9. stagalt 9ala sibb 'aʃti 'asaafir.
10. stagalna 9ala sibb niʃti nsaafir.

Drill 5 Repetition

1. 'ana musta9idd.
2. huw musta9idd.
3. 'ant musta9idd.
4. 'ana musta9idda.
5. hiy musta9idda.
6. 'anti musta9idda.
7. 'iHna musta9iddiin.
8. hum musta9iddiin.
9. 'antu musta9iddiin.
10. 'iHna musta9iddaat.
11. hin musta9iddaat.
12. 'antayn musta9iddaat.

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

huw musta9idd ysaafir. 'He is prepared to travel.'

1. we
2. she
3. I
4. we
5. they (m.)
6. work
7. tell us
8. come
9. tomorrow
10. we
11. negative
12. travel
13. at 8:00
14. I
15. she

Drill 7 Substitution

huw yiʃtaGil farraan. 'He works as a baker.'

1. mason	6. shopkeeper	11. driver
2. perfumer	7. workman	12. baker
3. baker	8. typist	13. engineer
4. barber	9. importer	14. doctor
5. carpenter	10. tailor	15. carpenter

Drill 8 Conjugation

Haaka	Haaku	Haakat	Haakayayn
Haakayt	Haakaytu	Haakayti	Haakaytayn
	Haakayt	Haakayna	
saayar	saayaru	saayarat	saayarayn
saayart	saayartu	saayarti	saayartayn
	saayart	saayarna	

Drill 9 Learn the following idiomatic phrases and expressions:

1.	ya 'ax yaHya!	'Brother Yahya!'
2.	9ala ra'si w-9ayni	'very gladly, at your service'
3.	'al-laHm Saar Gaali.	'Meat became expensive.'
4.	Sirt mudiir.	'I became (a) director.'
5.	law samaHt!	'If you (m.s.) please!'
6.	maa l-farg bayn...?	'What is the difference between...?'
7.	maabiʃ farg.	'There is no difference.'
8.	maa 9ad-bih?	'What else is there?'
9.	ʃtaGalt Hallaag.	'I worked as a barber.'
10.	nafs aʃ-ʃay'.	'(It's) the same thing.'

Drill 10 Translation

1. Brother Abdalla! I want you to tell me about something.
2. I am ready. Please ask! I am at your service.
3. She resigned after she had worked as a typist for the Ministry of Education. Later, she went to the Vocational School in Sanaa, graduated in two years and worked as a seamstress.
4. There isn't a big difference between a Hallaag and a muzayyin. Do you know what the difference is?
5. He wants me to let him know about the jobs that are available in Yemen. There are many jobs. There are jobs for typists, clerks, doctors, masons, tailors, barbers, drivers, pharmacists and engineers.
6. There aren't many factories in Yemen. Most of the industry here is light industry. There are factories for chairs, beds, cement and other light things.
7. I went to the Passports Department because I wanted to renew my old passport.
8. He went to the barber's to have a haircut.
9. When did you have a haircut? Two months ago.
10. I worked at the airport as a porter for five years. I resigned, travelled to Saudi Arabia and worked as a pipe fitter. I have been working as a pipe fitter there for the last three years.

VII. CONVERSATION

'al-muudiir: maa 'ismak w-kam 9umrak?
9ali: 'ismi 9ali w-9umri xamsa w-9iʃriin sana.
'al-muudiir: min 'ay madiina 'ant?
9ali: min al-Hodayda.
'al-muudiir: kam sana ʃtaGalt Tabbaa9?
9ali: xams siniin.
'al-muudiir: kam kaan ma9aaʃak fi ʃ-ʃahr?
9ali: 'alf w-xamsmiyat riyaal.

450

'al-muudiir: tammayt almadrasa ϴ-θaanawiyya?
9ali: na9am fi San9a.
'al-muudiir: tiʃti tiʃtaGil Tabbaa9 ma9aana?
9ali: 'aʃti 'aʃtaGil kaatib.
'al-muudiir: titkallam 'ingiliizi?
9ali: 'atkallam w-'aktub 'ingiliizi.
'al-muudiir: maa 9inwaanak w-ragam talafoonak?
9ali: 'al-9inwaan Sanduug bariid 4478 w-t-talafoon 39251.
'al-muudiir: tamaam! 9a-nuktub-lak nʃaaLLa. ma9 as-salaama!

U N I T 4 6

I. TEXT

'az-zawaaj

'iða 'ant kunt tiʃti titzawwaj ma tigdar tabsir al-bint alliði tiʃti titzawwajha. 'iða bih mara 'aw Hurma ma9ruufa willa gariiba 'aw 'ummak tirsilhum yuxTubuu-lak al-bint. 'al-bint tiji tajlis ma9aahin walaakin ma bitHissʃ 'inhin 9a-yuxTubuuha. 'almara lliði 'arsaltaha tʃuuf 'axlaag al-bint w-ba9d haaða tirja9 w-ant tis'alha: "kayf al-bint?" tgul-lak: "'al-bint Haaliya w-Tawiila w-9uyuunaha jamiila w-muta9allima." ba9d haaða 'ant tsiir w-ta'xuð-lak jamaa9a miθl 'abuuk 'aw xaalak 'aw 9ammak, ya9ni Hawaali 'arba9 'aw xams 'aʃxaaS ysiiru 'ila 'abuuha w-yitgaabalu w-yxazzinu w-yitʃaawaru w'-iða Saar gisma w-naSiib twaafig w-ywaafig 'abuuha w-yguul: "'ittafagna 9ala barakat illaah," w-yigra'u l-faatiHa. ba9da 'ahl al-Hareew yi9malu ma'dubat Gadaa' w-nsammi ma'dubat al-Gadaa' tayyih 'aʃ-ʃikma, w-yHuTTu l-mahr fi ʃamTa w-y'adduuha 'ila 'abu l-Hareewa. 'al-Hareew yjahhiz kulli ʃee': 'al-gumaaʃ w-l-Hilya w-θ-θiyaab. ba9da yimliku w-yjiibu l-gaaði willa waaHid fagiih w-yuktubu 9agd az-zawaaj. laylat ad-duxla yjiibu an-naʃʃaad w-yi9malu zaffa w-'abu l-9aruusa w-'agaariba yʃillu l-9aruusa 'ila bayt al-9aruus. ba9ʕ an-naas alHiin bi-yruuHu ʃahr 9asal fi l-gaahira 'aw landan.

II. TRANSLATION

Getting Married

If you want to get married, you cannot see the girl. If there is a woman known to the people or a relative, or your mother, she can be sent to ask the girl's hand in marriage for you. The girl comes and sits down with them but she does not sense that they are going to ask her hand in marriage. The woman you sent will see the girl's behavior. After this the woman returns and you ask her:"What is the girl like?"She

will say to you: "The girl is beautiful, tall, and her eyes are beautiful. She is well-behaved and educated." Then you find some people like your father or your uncle, i.e., about four or five people. They go to her father; they meet, chew qat and deliberate, and if they are lucky, she will accept and her father would agree and say: "We are in agreement, with God's blessing," and they read 'al-faatiHa. After that the bridegroom's folks give a luncheon, which we call 'aʃ-ʃikma, and they put the dowry in a bag and give it to the bride's father. The bridegroom provides everything: furniture, jewelry, clothes, etc. Then they consummate the marriage and bring forth a cadi or a learned man and write the marriage contract. On the wedding night they bring forth a minstrel and have a wedding procession. The bride's father takes the bride to the bridegroom's home. Some people nowadays go on a honeymoon to Cairo or London.

III. VOCABULARY

Hurma	(Hariim) woman. syn. mara or mare p. nisaa' or Hariim
ma9ruuf	(-iin) known, well-known
willa	conj. or. syn. 'aw
jalas	(yajlis) to sit down. syn. ga9ad
Hass	(yHiss) to feel s.th., be aware of s.th. or s.o.
'axlaag	behavior, manners, moral conduct
mu'addab	(-iin) well-behaved
muta9allim	(-iin) educated
taʃaawar	(yitʃaawar) to consult with each other
gisma	v.n. allotment, apportionment
naSiib	v.n. luck, change; share
'ittafag	(yittafig) to come to an agreement
baraka	(-aat) blessing. 9ala barakat illaah with God's blessing
'al-faatiHa	the first sura of the Quran
ma'duba	(ma'aadib, -aat) banquet, formal dinner

	samma	(ysammi) to name, call s.o. or s.th.
	tayyih	demon. pron. this (f.). var. haaδi, haaδeh
	jahhaz	(yjahhiz) to provide, furnish; to prepare
	gumaaʃ	coll. furniture
	'amlak	(yimlik) to contract a marriage
	laylat ad-duxla	wedding night. var. laylat ad-duxuul
	naʃʃaad	(-iin) minstrel; poet. syn. maddaaH p. -iin
	ba9ḍ	(with foll. n.) some of
	9asal	coll. honey. ʃahr 9asal honeymoon
IV.	ʃaawar	(yʃaawir) to consult s.o., ask s.o.'s advice
	taGayyar	(yitGayyar) to be changed
	tanaḍḍaf	(yitnaḍḍaf) to be cleaned
	taHaddad	(yitHaddad) to be defined, set; to be limited
	taGallag	(yitGallag) to be closed, shut
	tabaddal	(yitbaddal) to be changed; to be replaced
	tajaawab (ma9)	(yitjaawab) to respond (with) s.o. or each other
	taḍaahar b-	yitḍaahar) to pretend to be
	tajaahal	(yuitjaahal) to ignore s.th. or s.o.
	tagaatal	(yitgaatal) to quarrel with each other
	tamayraḍ	(yitmayraḍ) to pretend to be ill
	baa9	(ybii9) to sell
	9uTuur	coll. perfume
	bihaar	coll. spices

V. GRAMMAR

1. Class V Verbs

Almost all Class V verbs are derived from Class II verbs by the prefixing of t-. They are usually reflexive of Class II; they denote

the state of an object as the result of the action of the Class II verb, i.e., the subject does something to himself. Examples:

Class II		Class V	
9allam	'to teach'	ta9allam	'to learn'
zawwaj	'to marry s.o. to s.o. else'	tazawwaj	'to get married'
Gadda	'to give lunch to s.o.'	taGadda	'to have lunch'
kallam	'to talk to s.o.'	takallam	'to speak'
malla	'to fill up s.th.'	tamalla	'to be full, filled up'
sallaf	'to lend money'	tasallaf	'to borrow money'

Some Class V verbs are passive in meaning:

Class II		Class V	
zarrab	'to ruin s.th.'	taxarrab	'to be ruined, spoiled'
baddal	'to change'	tabaddal	'to be changed'
Gallag	'to close'	taGallag	'to be closed'
naʕʕaf	'to clean'	tanaʕʕaf	'to be cleaned'
Haddad	'to define, limit'	taHaddad	'to be defined, limited

Note that the last five examples of Class II verbs are transitive and the corresponding Class V verbs are intransitive. A few Class V verbs are transitive:

tazawwaj bint jamiila. 'He married a beautiful girl.'
tasallaf 'alf riyaal. 'He borrowed a thousand riyals.'

Most of the imperfect tense forms of these verbs denote a passive-potential meaning:

'al-wagt yitbaddal. 'The time is changeable, i.e., it is subject to change.'
haaʒa ma yitGallag. 'This cannot be shut, closed.'
baTn ma yitmalla 'a bottomless belly'

1.1 The imperfect stem vowel of Class V verbs is -a-. Examples:

yitkallam, 'atkallam, titkallam, yitkallamayn, etc.

1.2 The Imperative

The imperative form of Class V verbs is the same as the imperfect stem of those verbs. Examples:

-takallam-	takallam!	'Speak (m.s.)!'
-ta9allam-	ta9allam!	'Learn (m.s.)!'
-tazawwaj-	tazawwaj!	'Get married (m.s.)!'
-taGadda-	taGadda!	'Eat lunch (m.s.)!'
-ta9aʃʃa-	ta9aʃʃa!	'Eat dinner (m.s.)!'

It should be pointed out that the -a- of the prefix ta- is either the perfect tense or the imperative is elided.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Multiple Substitution

'arsal 'umma 'ila 'ahl al-bint 'He sent his mother to the girl's folks.'

1. I -- my brother -- grocer and butcher
2. I -- my father -- dealer and importer
3. she -- her brother -- cadi and minister
4. we -- engineer -- industrial school

5. we -- driver -- Ministry of Public Works
6. he -- letter and parcel -- his family
7. I -- package and box -- my children
8. they -- two persons -- Passports Office
9. they -- jewelry and clothes -- the bride
10. they -- cars -- their sister's wedding ceremony

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'al-bint tiji tajlis ma9aahin.
'The girl comes to sit with them (f.s.).'

1. father
2. mother
3. guests
4. perfect
5. 3 people
6. consulted
7. imperfect
8. future
9. talk
10. agree
11. perfect
12. my father
13. bridegroom
14. negative
15. imperfect

Drill 3 Substitution -- Translation

Hassat 'inhum 9a-yuxTubuuha.
'She felt that they were going to ask her hand in marriage.'

1. that I was going to ask her hand in marriage
2. that some guests were going to come to their home
3. that they were going to take her with them
4. that she was going to encounter problems
5. that she was not feeling well
6. that I was going to consult with her father
7. that they were going to come to an agreement
8. that my parents were going to ask her father for her hand in marriage
9. that they were going to agree on the dower and prepare everything
10. That they were going to quarrel and not come to an agreement

Drill 4 Translation

'al-bint 9uyuunaha Haaliya. 'The girl's eyes are beautiful.'

1. The bridegroom has good manners.
2. I want to ask her father for her hand in marriage.
3. We chewed qat, consulted the girl's father, and came to an agreement.
4. He furnished the apartment, bought the bracelets, and took them to the bride's home.
5. We have been waiting for a long time for the bride and the bridegroom.
6. We came to an agreement, with God's blessing, and read the faatiHa.
7. We went to the girl's father, met with him, and consulted him.
8. If we are lucky, her father will respond to our request.
9. He sold his old car and bought a new one.
10. She pretended to be ill and did not come to sit with them.

Drill 5 Substitution

Saar gisma w-naSiib w-xaTabna l-bint.
'We were lucky and asked the girl's hand in marriage.'

1. We agreed on the dowry, the jewelry and gold, the clothes, and set a date for the engagement.
2. He took his bride and went on a honeymoon.
3. They walked with each other, brought forth the cadi, and contracted the marriage.
4. We came to an agreement, wrote the marriage contract, and had a big banquet.
5. I resigned and got married after I had made a lot of money.

Drill 6 Repetition

1. ʃallu l-Hareewa w-'axaδuuha.
   'They carried the bride and took her.'
2. ʃallayna l-Hareewa w-'axaδnaaha. 'we'
3. ʃallayn l-Hareewa w-'axaδaynaha. 'they (f.)'
4. ʃallayt l-Hareewa w-'axaδtaha. 'I'
5. ʃallayti l-Hareewa w-'axaδtiiha. 'you (f.s.)'
6. ʃallaytu l-Hareewa w-'axaδtuuha. 'you (m.p.)'
7. ʃallaytayn l-Hareewa w-'axaδtaynaha. 'you (f.p.)'
8. ʃallat l-Hareewa w-'axaδatha. 'she'
9. ʃall l-Hareewa w-'axaδha. 'he'
10. ʃallu l-Hareewa w-'axaδuuha. 'they (m.)'

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

ʃallu l-9aruusa w-'axaδuuha.
'They (m.) carried the bride and took her.'

1. she
2. 'anti
3. 'antayn
4. hum
5. I
6. the boxes
7. we
8. the porters
9. the suitcases
10. the policeman
11. he
12. 'antu
13. hum
14. 'iHna
15. the bridegroom

Drill 8 Double Substitution

gaal 'ittafagna 9ala barakat illaah. (huw-'iHna)
'He said, "We came to an agreement, with God's blessing."'

1. 'ana -- hum
2. 'ana -- 'antu
3. hiy -- hin
4. hiy -- 'iHna
5. hum -- 'antu
6. hum -- hin
7. hin -- 'antayn
8. hin -- 'iHna
9. 'iHna -- hum
10. 'antu -- hum
11. 'antayn -- 'antayn
12. 'antayn -- hin

Drill 9 Repetition

samma	sammat	sammayt	sammayti	sammayt
sammu	sammayn	sammaytu	sammaytayn	sammayna

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

sammaynaa 'ibraahiim. 'We named him Ibrahim.'

1. they (m.)	6. she	11. future
2. they (f.)	7. I	12. they (m.)
3. you (m.p.)	8. you (m.s.)	13. we
4. you (f.p.)	9. you (f.s.)	14. she
5. he	10. we	15. I

Drill 11 Translation

1. He is not really ill. He just pretends to be ill. If he is really ill, why doesn't he go to the doctor?
2. We consulted with one another and the bride's father agreed; the bridegroom's father had an objection, but we finally came to an agreement.
3. They telephoned each other and agreed to go to the gold market and buy necklaces, earrings and rings. The fiancee said that she wanted to go with them.
4. We set the date of the engagement. I sent a letter to my friend so that he might come and celebrate the wedding with us. He has not answered yet.
5. She did not come to sit with them because she felt that they were going to ask her father for her hand in marriage. She pretended to be sick.
6. Now everything has changed. There are more people, more jobs, more buildings and more cars. Prices are high.

7. The one who sells perfume and spices is a perfumer and the one who sells tomatoes, potatoes, cucumber, etc. is a grocer. There is no difference between Hallaag and muzayyin. Most people use the former (i.e., the first word).
8. Her family is well-known in Sanaa; she is educated and well-behaved. You cannot find a better girl.
9. We are going to have a banquet next Friday. We are going to invite our relatives and and friends.
10. She felt that they were going to ask her hand in marriage. She ignored them because she wanted to marry her cousin.

Drill 12 Learn the following expressions and sample sentences:

1. tamayraʂ.
2. ʃaxS walla ʃaxSayn
3. Saar gisma w-naSiib.
4. 9ala barakat illaah
5. 'amlaku w-gara'u l-faatiHa.
6. ma'dubat al-Gadaa' nsammiiha ʃ-ʃikma.
7. jahhaz kull ʃee'.
8. 'al-girʃ al-'abyaʂ yinfa9 li-l-yawm al-'aswad.
   "The white (silver) qirsh is useful on a black day."
   Save up your money for a rainy day.

Drill 13 Composition

Tell what the following people do:

'al-9ammaar:

'al-9aTTaar:

'al-farraan:

'al-muzayyin:

'al-mixayyit:

'al-Hallaag:

'as-sawwaag:

'aT-Tabbaa9:

U N I T 4 7

I. TEXT

mugaabala

Hasan: maa 'ism al-'ax?

9ali: 9ali bin mHammad.

Hasan: 'ayn ta9mal?

9ali: b-aʃtaGil haana fi l-matHaf al-waTani.

Hasan: kayf al-9amal?

9ali: waLLa l-9amal kwayyis, mumtaaz. b-adaawim ba9d al-9aSr. bih naas bi-daawimu S-SubH w-bih naas bi-daawimu ba9d aʂ-ʂuhr. b-adrus layli. b-aHaawil 'atimm diraasati.

Hasan: fi 'ayya Saff ant ðalHiin?

9ali: tammayt al-madrasa l-'i9daadiyya w-ðalHiin fi S-Saff aθ-θaani θ-θaanawi. gaddamt 'imtiHaan fi 'aaxir as-sana w-najaHt al-Hamdu lillaah.

Hasan: mabruuk 9ala n-najaaH!

9ali: 'aLLa yibaarik fiik. 'alf ʃukr.

Hasan: kayf al-9amal haana ðalHiin?

9ali: murtaaH fi 9amali.b-adaawim min as-saa9a θaalaθ 'ila s-saa9a sitt.

Hasan: w-l-madrasa?

9ali: b-adrus fi l-layl min saa9at sab9.

Hasan: w-d-diraasa fi l-layl maaʃ Sa9ba?

9ali: maaʃi. sahla.

Hasan: maa 9amalak haana fi l-matHaf?

9ali: 9amali fi gaT9 at-taðaakir.

Hasan: kam giimat at-taðkara?

9ali: la-l-kibaar riyaal waaHid w-la-S-SiGaar nuSf riyaal.

Hasan: gablima ji't al-matHaf 'ayn kunt ta9mal?

9ali: maa kuntʃ 'aʃtaGil. kunt 'adrus fi n-nahaar.

Hasan: muwaffag ya 'ax 9ali.

9ali: 'aLLaah ywaffig al-jamii9.

II. TRANSLATION

Interview

Hasan: What's your name, brother?

Ali: Ali Bin Muhammad.

Hasan: Where do you work?

Ali: I work here, at the National Museum.

Hasan: How is the work?

Ali: Honestly, the work is good; it's excellent. I go to work in the late afternoon. There are people who work in the morning and there are people who work in the afternoon. I study at night. I am trying to complete my studies.

Hasan: What class are you in now?

Ali: I completed preparatory school and now I am in the second secondary class. I sat for an examination at the end of the year and passed, praise be to God.

Hasan: Congratulations on your success!

Ali: God bless you. A thousand thanks.

Hasan: How is the work here now?

Ali: I am comfortable in my work. I work from three to six.

Hasan: And school?

Ali: I study at night; I go at seven o'clock.

Hasan: Isn't studying at night difficult?

Ali: No. It's easy.

Hasan: What is your work here at the Museum?

Ali: My job is selling tickets.

Hasan: How much does a ticket cost?

Ali: One riyal for adults and half a riyal for children.

Hasan: Where were you working before you came to the museum?

Ali: I wasn't working. I was going to (day) school.

Hasan: Good luck, brother Ali!

Ali: Good luck to all of us.

III. VOCABULARY

matHaf (mataaHif) museum
waTan ('awTaan) homeland, home country
waTani (-yyiin) national. 'al-matHaf al-waTani the national museum
kwayyis (-iin) good; nice. syn. naahi
daawam (ydaawim) to go to work, report for duty
layli adj. night, evening. syn. masaa'i. madrasa layliyya, madrasa masaa'iyya night school
diraasa (-aat) study, studies; v.n. studying
'i9daadi adj. preparatory. madrasa 'i9daadiyya preparatory (junior high) school
'imtiHaan (-aat) examination; test. gaddam 'imtiHaan. He sits for an examination.
'aaxir (with foll. n.) end of, last part of. fi 'aaxir as-sana at the end of the year
najaH (yinjaH) to succeed; to pass an examination
mabruuk! Congratulations! mabruuk 9ala n-najaaH! Congratulations on your success!
najaaH v.n. success; success in, passing an examination
ʃukr v.n. thanks, thanking. 'alf ʃukr many thanks
gaTa9 (yagTa9) to cut, cut off s.th.
gaT9 v.n. cutting off s.th. gaT9 taðaakir buying or selling tickets
giima v.n. value, price; worth, cost
nuSf ('anSaaf) half. var. nuSS
kabiir (kibaar) adult; old; big
nahaar daylight, day. fi-n-nahaar during the day
muwaffag (-iin) successful, prospering. muwaffag! Good luck! I wish you success.
waffag (ywaffig) to make s.o. successful, prosperous (of God)

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

rasab	(yursub) to fail, not to pass an examination rasab fi l-'imtiHaan. He failed in the examination.
taragga	(yitragga) to be promoted (to a higher position)
tarjam	(yitarjim) to translate
mutarjim	(-iin) translator
hadiyya	(hadaaya) gift; present
Habb	(yHibb) to kiss; to love
laabaj	(ylaabij) to quarrel with s.o.
9iʃaa'	evening (m.). Salaat al-9iʃaa' the evening prayer
ʃams	sun (f.)
najma	(nujuum) star
masaa'i	adj. nightly. syn. layli
ʂayyig	(-iin) narrow. elat. 'aðyag
waasi9	(-iin) wide. elat. 'awsa9
kariim	(kuramaa', -iin) generous, bountiful
ðaki	('aðkiyaa') intelligent; clever. elat. 'aðka
Gabi	('aGbiyaa') stupid, foolish. elat. 'aGba
mihna	(mihan) vocation; job
mihani	vocational; industrial. markaz at-tadriib al-mihani the vocational training center
Hisaab	arithmetic; bill. p. -aat account
riyaaʂiyyaat	mathematics
dawaam	v.n. work schedule, reporting for duty. 'ad-dawaam min as-saa9a tisi9 'ila s-saa9a xams. The work schedule is from nine to five.

V. GRAMMAR

1. Class VI Verbs

Most Class VI verbs are formed from Class III verbs by prefixing ta-:

Class III		Class VI	
ʃaawar	'to consult s.o.'	taʃaawar	'to consult (deliberate) with s.o.'
gaabal	'to meet s.o.'	tagaabal	'to meet with s.o.; to have an interview with s.o.'
Haaka	'to talk to s.o.'	taHaaku	'they (m.) talked with each other'

A few Class VI verbs are formed from adjectives:

mariiʕ	'sick'	tamayraʕ	'to pretend to be sick'
jaahil	'ignorant'	tajaahal	'to ignore s.o., s.th.'

Class VI verbs denote the following meanings:

1. reciprocity:

taʃaawaru	'they (m.) consulted with each other'
tagaabalu	'they (m.) met each other'
tajaawabayn	'they (f.) responded with each other'
taHaakayn	'they (f.) talked to each other'

2. Pretense

tajaahal	'to ignore s.o. or s.th.; to pretend to be ignorant of s.th.'
tamayraʕ	'to pretend to be ill'
taʕaahar	'to feign, pretend'

This meaning usually obtains with verbs derived from adjectives.

Almost all Class VI verbs are derived from transitive Class III verbs as in the above examples and they have plural subjects except in

a few cases as cited above: tamayraʕ and tajaahal. The subjects of all the Class VI verbs cited above are animate. In a few cases there may be inanimate subjects, as will be shown later on.

1.1 The Imperfect

The imperfect stem vowel of sound and defective verbs of Class VI is -a-. Examples:

Perfect		Imperfect
tagaabal	'to meet with each other'	yitgaabal
taHaaka	'to talk with each other'	yitHaaka
tamayraʕ	'to pretend to be ill'	yitmayraʕ

1.2 The Imperative

The imperative forms of sound and defective verbs of Class VI verbs are the same as the imperfect stems of those verbs. Examples:

tagaabal! 'meet with s.o.'
taHaaka! 'talk with s.o.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Variable Substitution

'al-9amal kwayyis. b-adaawim ba9d al-9aSr.
'The work is good. I work in the late afternoon.'

1. easy	6. difficult	11. every day
2. afternoon	7. hum	12. a lot
3. night	8. late afternoon	13. huw
4. 'iHna	9. good	14. hin
5. morning	10. hiy	15. excellent

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

Salla Salaat al-9aSr w-gara' gur'aan.
'He prayed the afternoon prayer and read Quran.'

1. hiy	6. tagiyya	11. evening
2. noon	7. 'ana	12. question
3. 'iHna	8. afternoon	13. 'ant
4. evening	9. morning	14. 'anti
5. faaTima	10. 'iHna	15. 'antu

Drill 3 Question--Answer

T: 'ayn darast? 'Where did you study?'
s: darast fi l-madrasa l-layliyya. 'I studied at night school.'

1. industrial	6. agricultural	11. training center
2. morning (adj.)	7. day (adj.)	12. vocational school
3. secondary	8. evening (adj.)	13. Teach. Tr. College
4. elementary	9. college	14. junior high school
5. preparatory	10. Sanaa Univ.	15. secondary

Drill 4 Repetition

'aLLaah ywaffigak!	'Good luck (m.s.)!'
'aLLaah ywaffigku!	'aLLaah ywaffigha!
'aLLaah ywaffigiʃ!	'aLLaah ywaffighum!
'aLLaah ywaffigkin!	'aLLaah ywaffighin!
'aLLaah ywaffiga!	'aLLaah ywaffigna!

Drill 5 Double Substitution

T: huw -'ana
S: najaH fi l-'imtiHaan w-gult-ala mabruuk 9ala n-najaaH.
'He passed the examination and I said to him, "Congratulations on your success."'

1. huw -- 'iHna
2. huw -- 'anti
3. hum -- 'iHna
4. 'ant -- 'ana
5. 'anti -- hum
6. 'anti -- 'iHna
7. hiy -- 'anti
8. 'ana -- hum
9. 'antu -- hum
10. 'antayn -- hin
11. 'iHna -- hum
12. hin -- 'iHna
13. 'ana -- hiy
14. hum -- hum
15. 'antu -- hiy

Drill 6 Repetition

rasab fi l-'imtiHaan; ma najaHʃ.
'He failed in the examation; he did not pass.'

1. rasabt fi t-taariix; ma najaHtʃ.
2. rasabu fi l-handasa; ma najaHuuʃ.
3. rasabu fi t-tarbiya; ma najaHuuʃ.
4. rasabat fi r-riyaaðiyyaat; ma najaHatʃ.
5. rasabat fi l-'ingiliizi; ma najaHatʃ.
6. rasabtu fi l-9arabi; ma najaHtuuʃ.
7. rasabayn fi l-'imtiHaan; ma najaHaynʃ.
8. rasabtayn fi r-riyaaðiyyaat; ma najaHtaynʃ.
9. rasabna fi l-Hisaab; ma najaHnaaʃ.
10. rasabti fi l-handasa;l ma najaHtiiʃ.

Drill 7 Triple Substitution

T: 'ana -- year -- passed
S: gaddamt 'imtiHaan fi 'aaxir as-sana w-najaHt.

'I sat for an exam at the end of the year and passed.'

1. huw -- year -- passed
2. hiy -- month -- passed
3. hum -- month -- failed
4. hin -- year -- did not pass
5. 'ant -- week -- did not pass
6. 'anti -- week -- did not fail
7. 'antu -- semester (season) -- passed
8. 'antayn -- semester -- failed
9. 'iHna -- winter - travelled
10. 'ana -- spring -- came
11. huw -- fall -- got married
12. hiy -- summer -- passed

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

kunt 'aʃtaGil. 'I was working.'

1. studying
2. selling tickets
3. huw
4. translating
5. hiy
6. breathing
7. helping me
8. hum
9. hin
10. cooking
11. 'iHna
12. having a haircut
13. deliberating
14. quarreling
15. 'antu

Drill 9 Give the opposite of each of the following words.

→				
sahl	layli	najaH	kibaar	nahaar
waasi9	Gabi	'imsaak	ʃtara	bayyaa9
duxuul	jalas	fataH	wasx	tawassax
ga9ad	rasɑb	SiGaar	Tawiil	ðaki

Drill 10 Give another word that was the same or a similar meaning of each of the following:

layl	layli	giima	laabaj	mihna
bih	Tabiib	farraan	Haaka	Hallaag

Hareew	9aruusa	Hurma	jalas	Sudaa9
tabaddal	tagaatal	9ilaaj	'alam	taHaaka

Drill 11 Learn the following:

1.	'ad-dawaam as-saa9a xams.	'Work begins at five.'
2.	b-adaawim saa9at xams.	'I go to work at five.'
3.	gaddam 'imtiHaan.	'He sat for an examination.'
4.	najaH fi l-'imtiHaan.	'He passed the examination.'
5.	rasab fi l-'imtiHaan.	'He failed in the examination.'
6.	fi 'aaxir aʃ-ʃaari9	'at the end of the street'
7.	najaHt al-Hamdu lillaah.	'I passed, thanks to God.'
8.	mabruuk 9ala n-najaaH!	'Congratulations on your success.'
9.	muwaffag!	'Good luck (said to a male)!'
10.	mabruuk!	'Congratulations!' (invariable)

Drill 12 Translation

1. The working hours are nine in the morning to twelve noon and four in the afternoon to eight after the evening prayer.
2. I report for duty at four in the late afternoon and finish work at nine in the evening.
3. Congratulations on the increment you got. You will be promoted to manager. We must celebrate.
4. She works as a translator and I work as a typist.
5. When he comes home, he kisses his children and plays with them before dinner.
6. The earth goes round ("taduur") the sun. You can see the stars tonight. I can see some stars during the day.
7. He is intelligent, but he is stupid.
8. The teacher was very generous; I passed the mathematics examination.
9. He did not pass arithmetic in the junior high school; he left school and enrolled in the vocational training center.

10. I resigned because I was not promoted. I am now working as a translator in the Foreign Ministry.

U N I T 4 8

I. TEXT

Haadiθ sayyaara

Hawaadiθ as-sayyaaraat kaθiira. fiimarra wuga9 Haadiθ fi makaan ba9iid. kaanat aT-Tariig faaḍiya w-ma fiihaaʃ sayyaarat. 'as-sawwaag allaði Sadam ar-rajjaal ʃalla w-'axaða 'ila l-mustaʃfa. ḍamiira ma samaHla yfallit al-muSaab fi T-Tariig. fi l-mustaʃfa 9irfu 'ism al-maSduum min biTaagata. 'ittaSalu b-'ahla w-'ahla 'asra9u 'ila l-mustaʃfa. 'as-sawwaag kaanat θiyaaba malyaana b-d-damm. 'axað nafsa w-ma9aa waaHid min Haras al-mustaʃfa w-saar w-sallam nafsa 'ila 'idaarat al-muruur. 'ahl al-muSaab wuSlu 'ila l-mustaʃfa saa9at-ma xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat walaakin al-maSduum kaan gad maat gablima xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat. li-l-'asaf! 'innaa lillaah wa 'innaa 'ilayhi raaji9uun! 'ahl al-mayyit 'absaru maHḍar at-taHgiig allaði jara ma9 as-sawwaag fi l-mustaʃfa w-Tul9u naas kuramaa' w-ʃurafaa'. jaabu s-sawwaag 'ila maktab mudiir al-muruur w-gaamu 'ahl al-mayyit ysallimu 9alayh w-yHabbibuu. ya salaam!9ajiib! haaða Hilm walla 9ilm! waLLaah ad-dinya la tazaal b-xayr, walaakin an-naas ma kulluhum 'aʃraaf. ba9ḍ as-sawwaagiin 9indima yiwga9 Haadiθ miθl haaða yutruk al-muSaab w-yruuH. 'aLLaah y9iin 'ahl al-mayyit w-y9iin al-jamii9! la Hawla wala quwwata 'illa billaah!

II. TRANSLATION

A Car Accident

Car accidents are frequent. Once an accident occurred in a remote place. The road was empty and there were no cars on it. The driver who hit the man carried him and took him to the hospital. His conscience did not permit him to abandon the injured man on the road. At the hospital they learned the victim's name from his card. They contacted his folks and his folks hastened to the hospital. The driver's clothes were stained with blood. He, with one of the hospital guards, went and surrendered to the traffic bureau. The victim's family

arrived at the hospital at the time when he came out of the operating room, but he had already died before he came out. What a pity! We belong to God and we are returning to him! The victim's people read the report of the investigation which was conducted with the driver in the hospital; they were decent and respectable people. The driver was brought to the highway patrol director's office and the dead man's family began to shake hands with him and kiss him. What a good man he was! Wonderful! Is it a dream or reality! There are still good people in this world; but not all people are decent. When an accident similar to this one takes place, some drivers leave the victim and run. God help the dead man's folks and everybody else! There is no power and there is no strength except in God!

III. VOCABULARY

Haadiθ	(Hawaadiθ) accident; event. Haadiθ sayyaara car accident
faaʂi	(-yiin) empty, vacant; not busy. f. faaʂiya
Sadam	(yuSdum) to hit in a car accident
ʂamiir	(ʂamaa'ir) conscience
samaH l-	(yasmaH) to allow, permit s.o. to do s.th.
fallat	(yfallit) to leave, abandon; to resign
muSaab	(-iin) p.p. injured
maSduum	(-iin) p.p. having been hit in a car accident
biTaaga	(-aat, baTaa'ig) identity card
'asra9 (ila)	(yisri9) to hasten (to); to speed up
malyaan (b-)	(-iin) full (of); stained, blotted, e.g., with blood
nafs	('anfus) -self (with suff. pron.). 'axaδ nafsa 'ila... He took himself to...
'idaara	(-aat) office, bureau
muruur	v.n. traffic flow. 'idaarat al-muruur traffic bureau. ʃurTat al-muruur highway patrol, traffic police
saa9at-ma	conj. upon, at the time when

9amaliyya	(-aat) operation (in a hospital). Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat operating room
maat	(yamuut) to die, pass away
'asaf	v.n. regret, li-l-'asaf, ma9 al-'asaf unfortunately, what a pity!
'innaa	we. var. 'innana
raaji9	(-iin) returning, going back. 'innaa lillaah wa 'innaa 'ilayhi raaji9uun. Lit., "we belong to God we are returning to him" i.e., there is no recourse.
mayyit	('amwaat) deceased, dead person
maHʂar	(maHaaʂir) official report, record of factual findings
taHgiig	v.n. investigation
jara	(yajri) to take place, happen; to run
Tulu9	(yiTla9) to emerge, prove to be
kariim	(-iin, kuramaa') noble, decent
ʃariif	(-iin, ʃurafaa') respectable, honest
gaam	(yguum) (with following imperf.) to start, begin to do s.th. gaam yudrus. He started to study.
Habbab	(yHabbib) to kiss vehemently
ya salaam!	(exclamation of joy, esp. after something good has happened) What a...!
9ajiib	(-iin) wonderful, marvelous. 9ajiib! How wonderful!
Hilm	('aHlaam) dream, vision
9ilm	v.n. knowledge; information; p. 9uluum science. Hilm walla 9ilm! Is it a dream or reality!
'ad-dinya	the world, this world (as opp. to the world hereafter)
la yazaal...	It is still... laa yazaal Taalib. He is still a student. 'ad-dinya la tazaal b-xayr. There are still good things, people in this world.
'aʃraaf	var. ʃurafaa' p. of ʃariif
Hawl	v.n. might, power. syn. guwwa
quwwa	v.n. strength; force. var. guwwa. la Hawla wala quwwata 'illa billaah! There is no power and there is no strength except in God!

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

ltabaj	(yiltabij) to hit oneself
jtama9	(yijtami9) to have a meeting
xtalaf	(yixtalif) to be different
ltaff	(yiltaff) to turn around; to surround
Htaaj	(yiHtaaj) to need, be in need of s.th.
rtaaH	(yirtaaH) to be comfortable; to rest
Harag	(yaHrig) to burn s.th.
Htarag	(yiHtarig) to be burned
ntasa	(yintasa) to be forgotten
'ijtimaa9	(-aat) meeting
stama9 (ila)	(yistami9) to listen (to s.th.)

V. GRAMMAR

1. Class VII Verbs

Class VII verbs are rare in SA. Among the most frequently used Class VII verbs are 'inwalad 'to be born' and 'inkasar 'to be broken'; they are formed from their corresponding transitive Class I verbs by prefixing 'in-; 'i- of the prefix 'in- is optional.

Class I		Class VII	
walad	'to give birth to s.o.'	nwalad	'to be born'
kasar	'to break s.th.'	nkasar	'to be broken'

Class VII verbs denote the passive of Class I verbs. The object of a Class I verb becomes the subject of the corresponding Class VII verb: kasar az-zujaaj. 'He broke the glass.': 'az-zujaaj inkasar. 'The glass was broken.' Another grammatical meaning of a Class VII verb is that its imperfect denotes a passive-potential sense:

haaʁa z-zujaaj ma yinkasir. 'This class cannot be broken, i.e., it is unbreakable.'

2. Class VIII Verbs

Most Class VIII verbs are formed from Class I verbs in infixing -t- after the first radical, i.e., between the first and the second radicals. Examples:

ʃtaGal	'to work'	Htafal	'to celebrate'
STabaH	'to have breakfast'	ltabaj	'to hit oneself'
jtama9	'to have a meeting'	xtalaf	'to be different'
Htarag	'to be burned'	ntasa	'to be forgotten'
ltaff	'to turn around'	Htaaj	'to need'
ʃtaka	'to complain'	rtaaH	'to be comfortable'

As a class Class VIII verbs have a reflexive or middle meaning; they are reflexive of Class I verbs, i.e., they have the meaning of "doing s.th. to or for oneself":

Class I		Class VIII	
simi9	'to hear'	stama9	'to listen'
jama9	'to collect'	jtama9	'to have a meeting'

In a few cases Class I and Class VIII verbs have similar meanings:

ʃaka	'to complain'	ʃtaka	'to complain'
ʃara	'to buy'	ʃtara	'to buy'

It should be pointed out that Class I ʃaka and ʃara are rarely used.

A few Class VIII verbs have a passive meaning:

nisi	'to forget'	ntasa	'to be forgotten'
Harag	'to burn s.th.'	Htarag	'to be burned'

The imperfect stem vowel of Class VIII verbs is -i-; defective verbs have either -i- or -a- as stem vowels; and the imperfect stems of hollow and doubled verbs are identical to their corresponding perfect stems. Examples:

Perfect		Imperfect
ʃtaGal	'to work'	yiʃtaGil
jtama9	'to have a meeting'	yijtami9
STabaH	'to have breakfast'	yiSTabiH
ʃtara	'to buy'	yiʃtari
ʃtaka	'to complain'	yiʃtaki
Htaaj	'to need'	yiHtaaj
rtaaH	'to rest'	yirtaaH
ltaff	'to turn around'	yiltaff

2.1 The Imperative

The imperative forms of Class VIII verbs are the same as their imperfect stems; the prefix -i- is optional.

Imperfect		Imperative
yiʃtaGil	'he works'	('i)ʃtaGil!
yiʃtari	'he buys'	('i)ʃtari!
yirtaaH	'he rests'	('i)rtaaH!
yiftarr	'he turns around'	('i)ftarr!

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution--Translation

Hawaadiθ as-sayyaaraat.... 'Car accidents....'

1. are numerous
2. are more than at any other place
3. are not because of the cars themselves
4. are because of their owners
5. are something strange
6. are because of those who drive them
7. are because of those who do not know how to drive
8. are because of those who do not think of their families
9. are a big problem in this country
10. are everywhere but here they are more numerous

Drill 2 Substitution

wuga9 Haadiθ fi makaan ba9iid. 'An accident occurred in a distant place.'

1. in a nearby street
2. far away from here
3. in a big street
4. and the injured person died
5. and the driver died
6. at the time when you came
7. near the traffic bureau
8. in the marketplace
9. and four people were hit
10. and they took the driver to the police
11. and the driver abandoned the car
12. in an empty street
13. and I contacted the highway patrol
14. near the National Museum

Drill 3 Completion

ʕamiira ma samaHla yfallit al-muSaab.
'His conscience did not permit him to abandon the injured person.

1. to speed up and leave the place of the accident
2. not to carry the injured person to the hospital
3. not to help his folks who are poor and needy
4. to abandon the injured man in the empty street
5. to report for duty at ten o'clock
6. to pretend to be ill and not go to work
7. not to work and stay at home the whole day
8. to use the company car and not (to use) his own car
9. to get married and abandon his family
10. not to carry the victim to the hospital and not to give himself up to the traffic bureau

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'ahla 'asra9u 'ila l-mustaʃfa. 'His folks hastened to the hospital.'

1. I
2. her folks
3. we
4. the operating room
5. class
6. prayer
7. she
8. pharmacy
9. I
10. banquet
11. you (m.p.)
12. they (f.)

Drill 5 Conjugation

1. huw jara
2. hum jaru
3. hiy jarat
4. hin jarayn
5. 'ant jarayt
6. 'antu jaraytu
7. 'anti jarayti
8. 'antayn jaraytayn
9. 'ana jarayt
10. 'iHna jarayna

Drill 6 Double Substitution

'aθ-θiyaab kaanat malyaana b-d-damm.
'The clothes were stained with blood.'

1. car -- travellers
2. market -- people
3. operating room -- doctors
4. streets -- national guard
5. museum -- people
6. road -- cars
7. marketplace -- grapes
8. plate -- food
9. airport -- travellers
10. bottle -- water
11. towel -- blood
12. cup -- coffee

Drill 7 Translation

(using -nafs '-self'). Example:
sallam nafsa 'ila 'idaarat al-muruur.
'He gave himself up (surrendered) to the traffic bureau.'

1. He surrendered to the highway patrol right away.
2. He burned himself in the garage.
3. I made myself sick because I was working at night.
4. He benefited himself and his folks from his business.
5. I washed myself and my clothes with soap in the bathroom.
6. They took themselves and went to the investigation office.
7. She asked herself many questions after they had left.
8. They gave themselves increments and forgot the workmen.
9. She killed herself in a car accident.
10. He invited himself to the wedding and did not bring a gift.

Drill 8 Translation

(using kaan gad... 'He had already...') Example:
kaan gad maat qablima xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat.
'He had already died before he came out of the operating room.'

1. He had already met with them before I arrived.
2. We had already eaten before we chewed qat.
3. We had already been promoted before the director resigned.
4. I had already translated the book before I went to see the director.
5. I had already bought the tickets before I went to the airport.
6. She had already cleaned the house before the guests arrived.
7. She had already died before they carried her and took her to the hospital.
8. They had already known the girl before they asked her father for her hand in marriage.

Drill 9 Variable Substitution

gaam yuirus. 'He began to study.'

1. hum	6. teach	11. complain
2. quarrel	7. hiy	12. huw
3. translate	8. pray	13. speak
4. 'ana	9. 'iHna	14. drink beer
5. work	10. chew qat	15. walk

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

la 'azaal ḥ/taGil. 'I am still working.'

1. huw	5. cooking	9. teaching
2. hum	6. 'anz	10. 'ant
3. 'iHna	7. studying	11. working
4. hiy	8. hin	12. 'antu

Drill 12 Question -- Answer (based on TEXT)

1. 'ayn wuga9 Haadiθ s-sayyaara?
2. kayf kaanat aT-Tarig?. faaġiya 'aw malyaana b-s-sayyaarat?

3. man ʃall al-muSaab w-'axaʁa 'ila l-mustaʃfa?
4. kayf 9irif al-mustaʃa 'ism al-muSaab?
5. kayf kaanat ϑiyaab al-muSaab? naʂiifa?
6. 'ayʃ 9imil as-sawwaag? 'ayn saar?
7. man jaa' 'ila l-mustaʃfa?
8. 'al-muSaab maat gablima walla ba9dima xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat?
9. 'ayn jara at-taHgiig ma9 as-sawwaag? fi l-mustaʃfa walla fi 'idaarat al-muruur?
10. lilma Tul9u 'ahl al-maSduum naas kuramaa' w-ʃurafaa'?
11. lilma gaamu 'ahl al-mayyit ysallimu 9ala s-sawwaag w-yHabbibuu?
12. kayf naguul b-l-9arabi, "There are still good people in this world," wa, "There is no power and there is no strength except in God!"?

Drill 13 Composition

Reproduce the TEXT with the help of the following key words:

kaϑiira	Haadiϑ	ba9iid	faaʂiya	sayyaaraat
Sadam	ʃall	mustaʃfa	ʂamiir	biTaaga
'asra9	mustaʃfa	damm	Haras	sallam nafsa
maat	maHʂar	taHgiig	kuramaa'	ʃurafaa'
sallam	Habbab	ya salaam!	b-xayr	ba9ʂ as-sawwaagiin

U N I T 4 9

I. TEXT

'am0aal w-'agwaal

1. 'aaxir al-9ilaaj al-kayy.
2. 'aaxir al-layl ta'tiik ad-dawaahi.
3. 'aaxir al-mawaa9iid al-9iid.
4. 'ib9id min 'ahlak yHibbuuk w-jiiraanak yafgiduuk.
5. 'ibliis ma yxarrib daymata.
6. 'ibn as-sana Tabiib nafsa.
7. 'itGadda bih gablima yit9aʃʃa bik.
8. 'iθnayn ma yimʃiiʃ bihim markab.
9. 'iθnayn biiṣ xayr min ʃaahid 9adl.
10. 'uHlub! gaal: "huw tays!"
11. 'adxalta min al-baab fa 'axrajak min aT-Taaga.
12. 'iða jiit bilaad al-9uuraan 'i9wir 9aynak.
13. bayṣat diik.
14. bi-yabni 9ala xayʃ.
15. bagarat al-muzayyin ma txaafʃ min aT-Taasa.
16. 'iða Halag 'ibn 9ammak ballayt.
17. 'iða SaaHbak 9aSal la talHasa kulla.
18. 'iða ʃaddat ad-dawla ragadt.
19. 'iða 9ugir aθ-θawr Haṣarat as-sakaakiin.
20. jalasat jalasat w-'addat bint.
21. 'al-balaaʃ Ti9iim.
23. 'arba9a ʃallu jamal w-l-jamal ma ʃallahum.
24. 'iSrif ma fi l-jayb ya'tiik ma fi l-Gayb.
25. 'ahda hadiyya w-nafsa fiiha.
26. 'al-'a9war fi bilaad al-9umyaan faakiha.
27. 'aʃti laHm min kabʃi w-'aʃti kabʃi yamʃi.
28. 'aθ-θa9l θa9l lo yirkab 'umma miyat ðiib.
29. 'allaði ma yajiiʃ ma9 al-Hareewa ma yajiiʃ ba9daha.
30. ba9dima ʃayyab xatanuu.

II. TRANSLATION

Note: The literal translation is in parentheses.

Proverbs and Sayings

1. (The last remedy is cauterization.)
   When everything else fails, use force. There is no other remedy.
2. (At the end of the night you will be beset by calamities.)
   The intoxication has passed away and anxiety has come. The glory of an hour is gone in a second. No good thing lasts forever. In the late afternoon and at the beginning of the night people in Yemen socialize, chew qat and have a good time. At the end of the night all forms of merriment go away and people start to think of problems. This proverb urges people to be prepared for what the future holds. Equivalent to: Be prepared! Take precautions!
3. (The last, i.e., the worst, the most impractical appointment is the feast day.) Do not promise more than you can deliver. Equivalent to: Do not give false promises! If you promise something, make sure that you can keep your promise or put it into effect.
4. (If you keep your distance, your folks will love you and your neighbors will miss you.)
   Keep your distance! Familiarity breeds contempt. Better go around than fall into the ditch.
5. (Satan does not destroy his kitchen.)
   If Satan, the devil, does not do harm to himself and does not ruin his possessions, what about you (who is not Satan.)? Equivalent to: No one does harm to oneself.
6. (A one-year old is his own doctor.)
   No one knows you better than you yourself. Similar to the previous proverb and similar to: 'ibn 'arba9iin nahaar ma yi9wir 9ayna (A forty-day old will not blind himself in the eye.)
7. (Have him for lunch before he has you for dinner!)
   Be on the lookout! Forewarned is forearmed.

8. (A ship does not set sail with two captains.) (Two cannot steer a ship.)
   Too many cooks spoil the broth.
9. (Two white, i.e., silver riyaals are better than a court witness.)
   biiḍ 'white (p.)' here refers to the color of the silver riyal, the Maria Theresa silver riyal. This proverb is said during times of bribery. Two silver riyals, i.e., money, will buy a judge and make him twist the testimony of a witness.
10. (Milk him! He said, "He is a bull.")
    This proverb is used to describe a person who is so dense that he cannot see an impossible thing, or who argues for an impossible thing. Equivalent to: Be reasonable! Do not ask for the impossible! You cannot squeeze blood out of a turnip.
11. (You let him enter through the door, but he kicked you out of the window.)
    Give him an inch and he will take a mile. There are people who will turn against you if you do favors for them. This proverb is equivalent to 'adxalta b-yaddak fa 'axrajak b-rijla or to literary 'ittaqi ʃarra man 'aHsanta 'ilayhi.
12. (If you are in the country of the one-eyed, blind yourself in the eye.)
    When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
13. (A rooster's egg!)
    A rooster does not lay eggs; but if it does, it will be a rare event, and will be once in a lifetime; it cannot be repeated. It is usually used for a very pleasant event or occurrence.
14. (He builds on canvas).
    Canvas cannot be a foundation for a building. Equivalent to: He builds castles in the air. He is building a house on sand.
15. (A barber's cow is not afraid of the drum.)
    In the olden times in Yemen, especially in the villages, a barber, in addition to cutting hair, performed circumcision and did other kinds of jobs such as beating the drums during the month of Ramadhan and at weddings. His cow was used to hearing the beating

of drums; it was not afraid of the drums. This proverb is used to describe a person who does not heed threats because he is used to them. Do not think that you can threaten me.

16. (If your cousin shaves, you should moisten your beard.)
You should be on the lookout and forestall events. Seize the opportunity. This proverb is similar in meaning and use to No. 7 above. When the wind is fair, hoist your sails.

17. (If your friend is honey, do not lick him up all at once.)
Equivalent to: Don't use your credit all at once.

18. (If the government prepares for travel, i.e., if it wants to do something, e.g., paving a street, I will go to sleep.)
This proverb is used to describe the slow pace at which the government executes domestic affairs. It is used to describe a person who wavers, hesitates, and takes too long to do anything.

19. (If a bull is maimed, knives will increase.)
A bull or an ox is a symbol of power and strength. If it is wounded or killed, people would come with knives to cut it up (and inflict more wounds or take pieces of its meat.) When a great man falls or makes an error, people will show no compassion for him.
Equivalent to: All lay hands on the willing horse.

20. (She waited and waited and gave birth to a girl.)
She waited for a long time, hoping that she would give birth to a baby boy, but she gave birth to a baby girl; she disappointed her husband and other people. This proverb describes a person who is expected to fare well but disappoints people.

21. (The funeral procession is big, but the deceased is a mouse.)
Much cry little wool. A lot of smoke and no fire.

22. (Anything that is free of charge is delicious.)
Anything free is delicious and people are desirous of having more of it.

23. (Four people can carry a camel but a camel cannot carry them.)
This proverb calls for cooperation. What you cannot do singly can be done with others. Numbers overpower the brave. One hand does not clap. Strength is in numbers. In union there is strength.

24. (Spend what is in your pocket and you will be compensated by the invisible, i.e., God.)
This proverb urges people to give alms to the poor. Equivalent to: Spend and God will send.

25. (He gave a gift, but he wanted to take it back.)
This proverb describes a person who is niggardly, or who gives grudgingly. Equivalent to: You cannot eat your cake and have it, too.

26. (The one-eyed in the country of the blind is fruit.)
The one-eyed in the country of the blind is king.

27. (I want meat from my ram and I want my ram to walk.)
This proverb is similar in meaning and usage to proverb No. 25. above.

28. (A fox is a fox even if a hundred wolves had had sexual intercourse with its mother.)
A leopard cannot change his spots. This proverb is used in a derogatory sense.

29. (What does not come with the bride will not come after her, i.e., after she is no longer a bride.
This proverb urges people to seize the opportunity and do things before it is too late. Equivalent to: Make hay while the sun shines.

30. (After he became a very old man, they circumcised him.)
This proverb is equivalent to another Yemeni proverb, i.e., ba9dima ʃayyab, daxxaluu l-mi9laama. After he became very old, they sent him to school.' You cannot teach an old dog new tricks.

III. VOCABULARY

kayy	v.n. cauterization
'ata	(ya'ti) intran. to come. syn. jaa'; tran. to come to s.o.; to befall s.o.
daahiya	(dawaahi) calamity, misfortune
'ab9ad (min)	(yib9id) to go away, move away from

fagad	(yafgid) to miss s.o. or s.th., yearn for s.th.
'ibliis	Satan; devil
xarrab	(yxarrib) to destroy, ruin s.th.
markab	(maraakib) boat; ship
xayr min	better than
ʃaahid	(ʃuhuud) witness
9adl	v.n. justice. wazaarat al-9adl the ministry of justice
Halab	(yuHlub) to milk
tays	(tuyuus) billy goat
'adxal	(yidxil) to let in, make or let s.o. enter. opp. 'axraj
fa	conj. and. syn. wa, w-
'axraj	(yixrij) to make s.o. go out; to dismiss
'a9war	(9uuraan) one-eyed
9awar	(yi9wir) to blind s.o. in one eye
bana	(yabni) to build
xayʃ	coll. canvas. un. xayʃa
xaaf (min)	(yxaaf) to be afraid (of); to fear s.o. or s.th.
Taasa	(Tiisaan) drum
ball	(ybill) to make wet, moisten
SaaHib	('aSHaab) friend, acquaintance. syn. Sadiig
laHas	(yalHas) to lick
ʃadd	(yʃidd) to set out to do s.th.
dawla	(duwal) state; country
9ugir	passive, to be wounded; to be killed
θawr	(θiiraan) bull; ox
Haçar	(yuHçur) to come; to attend
janaaza	(-aat) funeral procession
fa'r	(fiiraan) mouse; rat
balaaʃ	gratis, free of charge
Ti9iim	(-iin) delicious, tasty
jamal	(jimaal) camel
Saraf	(yaSrif) to spend (money)
jayb	(juyuub) pocket
Gayb	v.n. that which is hidden, concealed

'ahda	(yihdi) to give s.th. as a present or gift
faakiha	(fawaakih) fruit
kabʃ	('akbaaʃ) ram, male sheep
θa9l	('aθ9ila) fox, jackal
rakab	(yirkab) to mount an animal; to ride, e.g., in a vehicle, on a bicycle, etc., board, e.g., a plane
ðiib	(ðiyaab) wolf
ʃayyab	(yʃayyib) to grow old, become an old man
xatan	(yaxtin) to circumcise

IV. GRAMMAR

1. Class IX Verbs

Class IX verbs do not occur in SA. They are verbs that indicate color or human characteristics in literary Arabic and other dialects of Arabic. Instead of saying Sfarr 'to turn or become yellow' Sanaanis use Saar 'to become, change into' + color adjective or human characteristic, e.g., Saar 'aSfar 'it turned yellow', Saar 'a9war 'he became blind in one eye'.

2. Class X Verbs

Class X verbs are characterized by a prefixed ('i)sta-. They are derived mainly from verbs and adjectives; a few are derived from nouns, and they are of the pattern 'istaC$_1$C$_2$aC$_3$.

Underlying Verb		Class X	
9imil	'to do; to make	sta9mal	'to use'
jaawab	'to answer'	stajaab	'to respond'
nafa9	'to benefit s.o.'	stanfa9	'to benefit (by s.th.)
'axbar	'to inform s.o.'	staxbar	'to inquire'
gaabal	'to meet s.o.'	stagbal	'to receive s.o.'

samaH	'to allow s.o. to do s.th.	stasmaH	'to seek forgiveness'
riji9	'to come back, return'	starja9	'to restore

Underlying Adjective		Class X	
Sa9b	'difficult'	staS9ab	'to find s.th. difficult'
Gani	'rich'	staGna	'to do without s.th.'
Hilw	'sweet'	staHla	'to find s.th. sweet'

Underlying Noun		Class X	
Hagg	'right, one's due'	staHagg	'to deserve'
jawaab	'answer'	stajwab	'to interrogate'

Most Class X verbs derived from Class I verbs denote the general meaning of asking, seeking, or demanding for oneself what is expressed by the Class I verb: stasmaH 'to seek forgiveness', starja9 ' to get s.th. back, restore', etc. From adjectives Class X verbs express the general meaning of finding or considering s.th. as what is expressed by the underlying adjective: staS9ab 'to find s.th. difficult, stashal to find s.th. easy', etc.

2.1 The Perfect Tense

The perfect stem vowel of Class X sound verbs is a; defective verbs are conjugated in the same way as bigi 'to remain, stay' (see Unit 33 V.4); hollow verbs have the perfect stems as staC$_1$aaC$_2$- and staC$_1$aC$_2$-; doubled verb forms are identical with those of Class I doubled verbs.

2.2 The Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stem vowel of sound, defective, and doubled verbs of Class X is -i-; hollow verbs have stafiil as their imperfect stem pattern. The derivational prefix is usually yi. Examples:

Perfect		Imperfect
sta9mal	'to use'	yista9mil
staGna	'to do without'	yistaGni
staHagg	'to deserve'	yistaHigg
stajaab	'to respond'	yistajiib
stafaad	'to benefit'	yistafiid

2.3 The Imperative

The imperative forms of sound, defective, hollow and doubled Class X verbs are the same as the corresponding imperfect stems of those verbs. Examples: sta9mil! 'Use!' stafiid! 'Profit!', etc.

V. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: perfect → imperfect
(Use appropriate time expressions.)

1. 'ata 'ila S-Saff 'ams.
2. fagadna 'ahlana w-bilaadana.
3. xarrabu s-sayyaara.
4. Halabt al-bagara.
5. 'adxalu 'awlaadahum fi l-madrasa.
6. 'al-mu9allim 'axrajni min aS-Saff.
7. Halagt ʃa9ri 'ams.
8. Haṣar 'ams saa9at xams.
9. jalasu ma9aana w-xazzanu.
10. ʃallat kutubha w-saarat.
11. Saraf kull fuluusi.
12. rakab Himaara w-saar.
13. 'asra9at 'ila l-bayt.
14. jara t-taHgiig 'ams.

Drill 2 Transformation: singular → plural

1. wuga9 Haadiθ sayyaara fi makaan ba9iid.
2. 'as-sawwaag Sadam ar-rajjaal w-ʃalla 'ila l-mustaʃfa.
3. 'ittaSalna b-'ahl al-maSduum w-jaa'u 'ila l-mustaʃfa.
4. Tulu9 ʃariif w-sallam nafsa 'ila 'idaarat al-muruur.
5. ma9 al-'asaf! maat ba9dima xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat.
6. gaam ysallim 9ala s-sawwaag w-yHabbiba.
7. ʃaahid al-9adl rakab as-sayyaara w-Haṣar 'ila l-maHkama.

8. bana bayt w-sta'jarta minna b-'alfayn riyaal fi ʃ-ʃahr.
9. 'ib9id min 'ahlak yHibbuuk w-jiiraanak yafgidyuuk.
10. 'adxalta min al-baab fa 'axrajni min aT-Taaga.
11. bagarat al-muzayyin ma txaafʃ min aT-Taasa.
12. fi haaδa t-Tariig bih 9aTTaar w-farraan w-Hallaag ba9da.

Drill 3 Double Substitution

stagbalni fi l-maTaar. 'He met me at the airport.'
huw -- 'ana

1. huw -- hum
2. hiy -- 'iHna
3. 'iHna -- hiy
4. hum -- 'ana
5. 'ana -- hum
6. 'iHna -- hin
7. hin -- 'iHna
8. 'ant -- hiy
9. 'antu -- hum
10. 'antayn -- hin
11. hin -- hin
12. hum -- 'iHna
13. hum -- 'antu
14. huw -- 'ana
15. 'ana -- hin
16. 'ana -- hiy
17. hiy -- 'iHna
18. hiy -- hiy

Drill 4 Translation

'ib9id min 'ahlak yHibbuuk. 'If you go away from your folks, they will like you.'

1. If you move away from your neighbors, they will miss you.
2. If you study, you will pass the examination.
3. If you say, "Milk the billy goat," we will say, "You are stupid."
4. If you let him in through the door, he will send you out through the window.
5. If you spend (money), God will send.
6. If you meet with us, you will know the problem.
7. If you work hard, you will get an increment.
8. If you help people, God will make you successful.
9. If you translate this book, you will be promoted.

10. If you sit down with us, we will deliberate and come to an agreement.
11. If you are well-behaved, people will like you.
12. If you use this medicine, you will be in better health.

Drill 5 Double Substitution

al-kitaab xayr min aS-Sadiig. 'A book is better than a friend.'
book friend

1. your folks -- your friends
2. milk -- tea
3. your health -- your money
4. cow -- donkey
5. Salaa -- sleep (nawm)
6. one-eyed -- blind
7. gold -- silver
8. your neighbor -- your house
9. hen -- rooster
10. ram -- bull
11. passport -- identity card
12. knowledge -- dream
13. strong -- weak
14. daylight -- nighttime

Drill 6 Derivation

Derive Class X verbs from the following words and use each in a meaningful sentence:

9imil	jaawab	riji9	gaabal	nafa9
jawaab	Hagg	Sa9b	Gani	Hilw

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

bana bayt. 'He built a house.'

1. hum
2. hiy
3. 'ana
6. houses
7. school
8. huw
11. rented
12. bought
13. hum

4. building	9. apartments	14. sold
5. 'iHna	10. 'antu	15. built

Drill 8 Conjugation

Saraf kull fuluusa. 'He spent all his money.'

1. 'ana	6. hiy	11. hin
2. hiy	7. 'ant	12. 'ana
3. hum	8. 'antu	13. hum
4. 'iHna	9. 'anti	14. hin
5. huw	10. 'antayn	15. 'antu

Drill 9 Transformation: imperative → negative command

xarrib as-sayyaara! → la txarrib as-sayyaara!
'Ruin (m.s.) the car!' → 'Do not ruin (m.s.) the car!'

1. 'uHlub al-bagara!	8. ta9aali ma9aahum!
2. 'ibni bayt!	9. 'iHrig al-kitaab!
3. 'ilHas al-9asal!	10. 'ista9mili d-dawaa'!
4. 'uHḍuri l-'ijtimaa9!	11. 'iʃtaGilu fi l-layl!
5. 'iSrif kull al-fuluus!	12. 'iʃtari sayyaara!
6. 'irkabu s-sayyaara!	13. 'istami9 'ila r-raadyo!
7. 'ismaH-la yudxul!	14. 'uxruj min haana!

Drill 10 Learn the following:

1. huw murtaaH aḍ-ḍamiir.	'He is of peaceful mind.'
2. samaH-li 'adul.	'He allowed me to enter.'
3. sallam nafsa.	'He surrendered, gave himself up.'
4. maat min al-xawf.	'He was scared to death.'
5. jara miilayn.	'He ran two miles.'
6. 'ayʃ jara?	'What happened?'

7.	'iHtajt sayyaara.	'I was in need of a car.'
8.	'atathum ad-dawaahi.	'They were beset by calamities.'
9.	'at-tays tays.	'A leopard cannot change his spots.'
10.	'al-fa'r xaaf min ad-dimm.	'The mouse was afraid of the cat.'

U N I T 5 0

REVIEW

A. VOCABULARY

Drill 1 Fill in the space with an approprite word or phrase:

1. finjaan al-gahwa kaan faaɣi, maaʃ _____.
2. 'as-sawwaag allaði _____ ar-rajjaal ʃalla w-'axaða 'ila l-mustaʃfa.
3. min biTaagata tigdar ta9rif _____ w _____.
4. stagaal ya9ni _____.
5. 'as-sawwaag Sadam ar-rajjaal; 'ar-rajjaal huw 'al _____.
6. θiyaab al-maSduum kaanat _____ b-d-damm.
7. li-l-'asaf! 'al-maSduum kaan gad _____ ba9dima xaraj min Gurfat _____.
8. 'innaa lillaah wa 'innaa 'ilayhi _____.
9. la _____ wala _____ 'illa billaah!
10. 'aaxir al-9ilaaj _____ wa 'aaxir al-layl ta'tiik _____.
11. 'ib9id min 'ahlak yHibbuuk w-jiiraanak _____.
12. 'ibliis ma _____ daymata.
13. 'iða Halag 'ibn 9ammak _____.
14. 'ad-_____ min saa9at tisi9 'ila saa9at xams.
15. ma yudrusʃ fi madrasa lalyliyya; yudrus fi madrasa _____.
16. _____ fi l-'imtiHaan li'anni darast gawi, bass Sadiigi rasab fi l_____.
17. yitarjim min al-'ingiliizi 'ila l-9arabi; 'iðan huw _____.
18. yiʃti ySiir najjaar; huw fi markaz at-tadriib _____.
19. haaða T-Tariig maaʃ waasi9, _____.
20. 'iða SaaHibak 9asal la _____ kulla.
21. 'al-janaaza kabiira w-l-mayyit _____.
22. 'aʃti 'atzawwaj. 'arsalt 'ummi w-'uxti 9ala sibb _____ bint 9ammi.

23. waafag 'abu l-bint 9ala z-zawaaj w-gara'na _____ w-9milna _____ Gadaa'. 'iHna nsami _____ al-Gadaa' 'aʃ-ʃikma.
24. HaTT al-_____ fi ʃamTa w-'adduuha 'ila 'abu l-_____.
25. 'al-Hareew 9alayh yjahhiz kull ʃee': al-_____ w-l-_____ w_____.
26. 'allaδi yuktub 9agd az-zawaaj haana fi l-yaman huw al-_____ willa waaHid _____.
27. laylat ad-duxla yjiibu _____ w-yi9malu _____.
28. 'al-mara naḍḍafat al-bayt; 'al-bayt _____.
29. bəddal al-wagt; 'al-wagt _____.
30. huw maaʃ mariiḍ, bass _____ b-'anna mariiḍ.
31. min al-mihan al-mawjuuda fi l-yaman: bih _____ w_____ w_____ w_____ w_____.
32. 'al-9ammaar huw al_____ 9an al-buyuut w-l-binaayaat w_____ huw allaδi yiʃtaGil b-yadda.
33. 'al-Hallaag _____ aʃ-ʃa9r w-l-muzayyin _____ aʃ-ʃa9r 'aw _____.
34. 'aθ-θa9l _____ lo yirkab 'umma miyat δiib.
35. 'al-'a9war fi bilaad al-9umyaan _____.
36. 'iδa 'ant 9indak 'alam fi r-ra's, ya9ni 9inak _____.
37. aT-Tabiib ya9mal fi l_____ w-S-Saydali ya9mal fi _____.
38. 'axaδt ar-_____ min aT-Tabiib w-sirt 'ila S-Saydaliyya w-ʃtarayt ad-dawaa'.
39. 'iδa bik waja9 'asnaan, laazim 9alayk truuH 'ila _____ _____.
40. ruHna w-ʃtarayna _____ 'ila l-Hareew w-l-Hareewa.
41. 'al-farg bayn al-9ammaar w-ʃ-ʃaagi huw _____ w-ʃ-ʃaagi _____.
42. 'allaδi yxayyiT _____ huw al-mixayyiT.
43. 'iHna gaabalna l-mudiir; 'al-mudiir _____-na fi maktaba.
44. 'iδa 'ana kasart al-finjaan, ya9ni l-finjaan _____.
45. 'ana ʃaawart 'ahli; 'iHna _____.

46. huw yit$aahar b-'anna marii$; huw _____.
47. 'ana sallafta 'alf riyaal. huw _____ minni 'alf riyaal.
48. ya'kul ka8iir w-baTna kabiir. baTna ma _____.
49. 'al-bayt Saar na$iif; 'al-bayt _____.
50. 'ana l-mu9allim; darasu ma9i 'ingiliizi; _____ hum 'ingiliizi.

B. ADJECTIVES AND COLORS

Drill 2

I. Give the opposites of the following adjectives:

fagiir _____	jadiid _____	kabiir _____
Tawiil _____	ka8iir _____	sahl _____
gawi _____	8aki _____	waasi9 _____
malyaan _____	SaGiir _____	wasx _____
'aswad _____	baarid _____	Gaali _____
mumtaaz _____	naHiif _____	xafiif _____

II. Fill in the blanks with a suitable adjective or color:

1. 'al-yawm al-jaww Haami gawi. 'a∫ti ∫aahi. 'ana _____ ka8iir.
2. hiy ti∫ti ta'kul; ma 'akalat∫. hiy _____ gawi.
3. 'al-'a9war ba∫n al _____ faakiha.
4. 'al-'a9war xayr min al _____.
5. hiy _____; ma tigdar∫ tibsir.
6. 'i8nayn _____ xayr min ∫aahid 9adl.
7. 'i8a jiit bilaad al _____ 'i9wir 9aynak.
8. 'al-janaaza _____ w-l-mayyit fa'r.
9. 'az-zalaT txarrij al-jinn _____.
10. jaarak al-gariib wala 'axuuk al _____.
11. bih tuffaaH _____ w-bih tuffaaH _____.

12. lawn al-HabHab _____ min al-xaarij w_____ min ad-daaxil.
13. 'ana ma 'aʃtiiʃ batrool 9aadi; 'aʃti batrool _____.
14. 'al-baTTiixa lawnaha _____ min al-xaarij w_____ min ad-daaxil.
15. bih TamaaTiis kaθiir fi s-suug al-yawm. 9ala sibb haaδa 'aT-TamaaTiis _____ maaʃ _____.

Drill 3

C. Underline the correct form or phrase:

1. haaδi (sikirteera, s-sikirteera, s-sikirteerat) maryam.
2. jaa'at ma9 (θintayn 'axawaataha, 'iθnayn min 'axawaataha, 'axawaataha 'il-'iθnayn, 'axawaataha aθ-θintayn).
3. 'al-yawm ('iθnayn, 'iθnatayn, θaani, al-'iθnayn).
4. 9indi maw9id 'as-saa9a (θintayn, 'iθnayn, 'θ-θintayn).
5. ta9aal (yawm al-jum9a, al-yawm al-jum9a, yawm al-jum9a!)
6. hin (yiHtajin, yiHtaajin, tiHtaajin) sayyaara.
7. xamsat miya w-xamsa w-xamsiin
   xamsat miyat w-xamsa w-xamsiin
   xamsmiya w-xamsa w-xamsiin
8. miyat w-riyaalayn
   miya w-iθnayn riyaal.
   miyat riyaal w-riyaalayn
9. xamsmiyat malyoon
   xamsatmiya malyoon
   xamsatmiyat malyoon
   xamsmiyat malaayiin
10. banaat θintayn
    'iθnayn banaat
    banaat 'iθnayn
    θintayn bint
11. hum (raayiHiin, raayiHuun, yraayiHuun) hownaak.
12. (kam al-wagt? kam as-saa9a? kam δalHiin?)
13. sirt hownaak w-'absart maHHad.
    sirt hownaak w-'absart 'aHad.
    sirt hownaak w-'absart maaʃ 'aHad.

14. (maHHad jaa', maaʃ waaHid jaa', maaʃ 'aHad jaa').
15. 'az-zawaaj ykallif kaθiir. (waaHid, 'al-waaHid, maHHad, 'aHad) ma yigdarʃ yitzawwaj 'iðа maabiʃ zalaT kaθiir.
16. liff 9ala (yaddak yimiin, yamiinak, yadd yamiinak, l-yamiinak).
17. huw allaði Sadam ar-rajjaal. 'al-Hagg (9alayh, lah, minnah, bih).
18. huw ʂayyafni (min, 'ila, la-, 9ala) l-9aʃaa'.
19. Htafalna (l-9iid, b-l-9iid, fi l-9iid, ma9 al-9iid) 'ams.
20. Haaðawla t-tuffaaHaat (Hamraa', Humr, Humriin, 'aHmariin).
21. 'aʃ-ʃikma (kaanat fiiha, kaanat fii, kaan fiiha) 'akl kaθiir.
22. (gaalat-li, gaalat-ni, gultiini) 'innaha mariiʂa.
23. 'al-mustaʃfa (9inda, bih, 'ila) 'alf karyuula.
24. (taʃaawarna, ʃaawarna) ma9aahum w-'ittafagna 9ala barakat illaah.
25. haaða l-9ilaaj (stafaadani, faadani, stfaadayt) minna kaθiir.
26. 'al-mudiir kaan rajjaal naahi. (jaawab, stajwab, tajaawab) mi9i.
27. (9a-yistagiil, 9a-yistagaal) min 9amala 9ala sibb huw mariiʂ.
28. 'al-fa'r (yxuuf, yxiif, yxaaf) min ad-dimm.

D. VERB FORMS

Fill in the correct form of the verb:

ʃtka 'to complain'

1. you (f.s.) complained:
2. you (f.p.) complained:

xaaf 'to be afraid'

1. I was afraid:
2. Don't be afraid (f.s.)!:
3. They (m.) are afraid:
4. They (f.) are afraid:

wugaf 'to stand up'

1. Stand up (m.s.)!:
2. Don't stand up (f.s.)!:
3. He did not stand up:
4. She wants to stand up:

tragga 'to be promoted'

1. I was promoted:
2. She was promoted:
3. He will be promoted:
4. They (f.) were promoted:

fallat 'to resign'

1. She resigned:
2. I will resign:
3. I resigned:
4. They (f.) are going to resign:

saar 'to go, walk'

1. They (f.) went:
2. Walk (m.p.)!:
3. I will walk:
4. We walked:

samma 'to name s.o. or s.th.'

1. We named her:
2. He named him:
3. They named:
4. They (m.) will name her:

baa9 'to sell'

1. He sold it (f.):
2. We sold them:
3. Don't sell (f.s.) it!:
4. He will sell it:

Habb 'to kiss'

1. I kissed them (m.):
2. She kissed her:
3. Kiss them (m.):
4. Don't kiss (m.s.) her!:

Haaka 'to talk to s.o.'

1. I talked to them:
2. He talked to them:
3. Don't talk (f.s.) to her!:
4. Talk to us!:

maat 'to die'

1. They (m.) died:
2. He is going to die:
3. Don't die (m.s.)!:
4. They are going to die:

jara 'to run'

1. We ran:
2. They (m.) ran:
3. Don't run (m.p.)!:
4. Run (f.p.)!:

ʃtara 'to buy"

1. I bought:
2. She bought:
3. Buy (m.s.) it!:
4. They (f.) will buy:

StaGna 9an 'to do without'

1. I did without it:
2. She did without it:
3. Can you do without it?:
4. We can do without it:

E. Give the Arabic for:

1. I have a headache and a toothache:
2. He became ill and did not benefit from the medicine:
3. The pharmacy is at the end of the street:
4. I am at your service! Just ask! I'll see what I can do.
5. We came to an agreement, with God's blessing:
6. I went to the barber's and had a haircut:
7. Very gladly, Brother Yahya!
8. What else is there? There is no difference.
9. I worked as a pipe fitter. sabbaak and samkari are the same thing.
10. Save up your money for a rainy day:
11. There was an accident and the driver carried the victim to the hospital:
12. This is a strange thing. People are not the same:
13. There are still good people in this world:
14. There is no power and there is no strength except in God!:
15. Much cry little wool!:
16. The one-eyed in the country of the blind is king.

F. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape and summarize it in about 150 words.

U N I T 5 1

I. TEXT

'al-yaman

'al-yaman yamtadd min jiizaan w-9asiir fi ʃ-ʃamaal w-'ila mu9ṣam al-manaaTig al-9umaaniyya fi ʃ-ʃarg. yamtadd 9ala kull xaliij 9adan walaakin ma9 muruur az-zaman Saar al-yaman yamanayn 9ala sibb al-'iHtilaal al-bariiTaani fi l-januub: bih ðalHiin al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali w-'isma r-rasmi 'al-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya w-l-yaman al-januubi llaði huw Saar ma9ruuf b-'ism jumhuuriyyat al-yaman ad-diimograaTiyya ba9d 'insiHaab al-guwwaat al-bariiTaaniyya 9aam 'alf w-tisa9miya w-sab9a w-sittiin. bi-yitba9 siyaasa gariiba min siyaasat al-'ittiHaad as-sofyeeti. b-n-nisba 'ila ʃ-ʃaTr aʃ-ʃamaali kaan niṣaam al-Hukm bih malaki w-gad gaamat θawra fi sanat 'alf w-tisa9miya w-θalaaθa w-sittiin ba9d Huruub 'ahliyya Tawiila w-fi 'awaaxir as-sab9iinaat bada'at marHala jadiida. 'al-gawaaniin fi l-yaman ʃ-ʃamaali min aʃ-ʃarii9a l-'islaamiyya.

II. TRANSLATION

Yemen

Yemen extends from Jizan and Asir in the north to most of the Omani regions in the east. It extends to the Gulf of Aden, but over the passage of time Yemen became two Yemens because of the British occupation in the South: now there are North Yemen, the official name of which is the Yemen Arab Republic (Y.A.R.), and South Yemen, which has become known as the Democratic Republic of Yemen after the withdrawal of the British forces in 1967. It adheres to a policy that is close to that of the Soviet Union. As for the North (part), its system of government is that of a monarchy. A revolution broke out in 1963 after a long civil war and toward the end of the seventies a new era began. The law in North Yemen is based on Islamic Sharia.

III. VOCABULARY

mtadd	VIII to stretch, extend
jiizan	Jizan, city in Saudi Arabia, also known as a district
9asiir	Asir, district in Saudi Arabia
mu9ẓam	(with foll. def. n.) most of
minTaga	(manaaTig) region, district
9umaan	the State of Oman
9uymaani	(-yyiin) from, characteristic of Oman
xaliij	(xiljaan) gulf. xaliij 9adan Gulf of Aden
9adan	Aden
muruur	v.n. passage, passing (e.g., of time)
zaman	('azmaan) time. syn. wagt p. 'awgaat
'iHtilaal	v.n. occupation
bariiTaaniya	Britain
bariiTaani	(-yyiin) British, characteristic of Britain
'al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali	North Yemen
rasmi	(-yyiin) adj. official, formal
jumhuuriyya	(-aat) republic. 'al-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya the Yemen Arab Republic
'al-yaman al-januubi	South Yemen
ma9ruuf b-	(-iin) known by; famous for
diimograaTiyya	v.n. democracy
diimograaTi	(-yyiin) democratic
'insiHaab	v.n. withdrawal, e.g., of forces
guwwaat	armed forces, troops
9aam	('a9waam) year. syn. sana p. -waat
taba9	(yitba9) to adhere to, follow
siyaasa	(-aat) policy
'ittiHaad	v.n. union; unity
sofyeeti	adj. Soviet, Russian. 'al-'ittiHaad as-sofyeeti the USSR

b-n-nisba'ila	as for, with regard to
ʃaTr	('aʃTur) part, portion, 'aʃ-ʃaTr aʃ-ʃamaali North Yemen. syn. 'al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali
niʕaam	('anʕima) system; order, organization
Hukm	v.n. rule, ruling. niʕaam al-Hukm system of government
malaki	adj. monarchic; royal
gaam	(yguum) to break out; to happen, take place
Harb	(Huruub) war (f.)
'ahli	adj. domestic; native; national. f. 'ahliyya. Harb 'ahliyya civil war. 'al-bank al-'ahli the National Bank
'aaxir	('awaaxir) the end, the last part of (with foll. def. n.); the last (with foll. indef. n.) 'aaxir as-sana the end of the year. fi 'aaxir as-sab9iinaat during the last part of the seventies. 'aaxir sana the last year
bada'	(yabda') to begin, start. (with foll. imperf.) to begin to do s.th. bada' yudrus. He began to study.
marHala	(maraaHil) era; stage, phase
gaanuun	(gawaaniin) law; canon, statute
ʃarii9a	Sharia. 'aʃ-ʃarii9a the canonical law (of Islam)
'al-'islaam	Islam, the religion of Islam
'islaami	adj. Islamic (with foll. nonhuman noun). 'aʃ-ʃarii9a l-'islaamiyya the Sharia, Islamic law

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

malakiyya	v.n. kingship, monarchy
maʃhuur (b-)	(-iin) famous (for)
'ajnabi	('ajaanib) foreign; foreigner
diin	('adyaan) religion, faith
naSraani	(naSaara) Christian
Huduud	border (of a country), borderline

'aaθaar	antiquities; ruins. daa'irat al-'aaθaar department of antiquities
ta9liim	v.n. teaching, instruction
Htall	VIII to occupy (a country)
nsaHab	VII intran. to withdraw, go back
gawzab	(ygawzib) to be seated in a submissive manner
gawzaba	v.n. act of being seated in a submissive manner

V. GRAMMAR

1. Quadriliteral Verbs

Quadriliteral verbs, sometimes referred to as quadriradical verbs, have four radicals. They can be simple (sound, weak, reduplicated from Class I doubled verbs) or derived. The derived ones are formed by prefixing 'it- to the quadriliteral simple verb. Examples of simple quadriliteral verbs:

Sound:	tarjam	'to translate'
	gambar	'to be seated, sit down'
	kamkam	'to sew, sew up a sleeve'
	baxʃaʃ	'to tip; to bribe'
	Salfa9	'to slap s.o.'
	xarbaT	'to mix; to mess up s.o., s.th.'
Weak:	gahwa	'to give coffee to s.o., welcome s.o. with coffee'

Reduplicated Class I		Quadriliteral	
gaSS	'to cut off s.th.'	gaSgaS	'to cut up s.th.'
dagg	'to beat s.th.; to knock at s.th.'	dagdag	'to beat s.th. repeatedly; to knock at the door'
laff	'to coil, wind s.th.'	laflaf	'to wrap up; to pack, e.g., one's personal effects'

A few quadriliteral verbs are derived from nouns, as in the examples given above:

Noun		Quadriliteral	
baxʃiiʃ	'tip; bribe'	baxʃaʃ	'to tip; to bribe'
kumm	'sleeve'	kamkam	'to sew, sew up a sleeve'
gahwa	'coffee'	gahwa	' to offer coffee to s.o.'

Examples of derived quadriliteral verbs:

Quadriliterals		Derived Quadriliterals	
tarjam	'to translate'	ttarjam	'to be translated
Salfa9	'to slap s.o.'	tSalfa9	'to be slapped'
xarbaT	'to mix; to mess s.o. or s.th. up'	txarbaT	'to be mixed up'
gahwa	'to offer coffee to s.o.'	tgahwa	'to have coffee; to be offered coffee'

Derived quadriliteral verbs, as far as derivation is concerned, are similar to Class V verbs: Class V verbs have the prefix ta- and derived quadriliterals have the prefix t-; the structure of a Class V verb is of the pattern ta-$C_1aC_2C_2aC_3$; that of a derived quadriliteral is of the pattern t-$C_1aC_2C_3aC_4$. As for meaning, most derived quadriliteral verbs denote the passive meaning of transitive simple qudriliteral verbs, as in the four examples given above.

It has already been pointed above that most of the negative imperfect tenses of Class V verbs denote a passive-potential meaning. The negative imperfect of derived quadriliteral verbs expresses a similar meaning:

haaʕa l-kitaab ma yittarjam. 'This book cannot be translated; it is not translatable.'

'an-niʕaam ma yitxarbaT. 'The system cannot be messed up.'
'al-kariim ma yitSalfa9. 'A noble person cannot be slapped.'

1.1 Perfect Tense

Perfect sound and hollow quadriliteral and derived quadriliteral verbs are regular and thus conjugated with no stem changes; defective verbs have two stems like any other defective verb. Examples:

gahwa gahwat gahwu gahwa
gahwayn gahwayt gahwayti, etc...

1.2 Imperfect Tense

Sound and defective quadriliterals have the stem vowel -i- after the third radical; hollow qudriliterals have it after the second qudriliteral, e.g., ytarjim 'he translates', ygahwi 'he welcomes s.o. by giving them coffee,' etc. Derived quadriliterals have the stem vowel -a- after the third radical, e.g., yitSalfa9, yitgahwa, etc.

1.3 The Imperative

The imperative forms of quadriliterals are the same as the imperfect stems of those verbs. Those of derived quadriliterals are not usually used.

Imperfect		Imperative	
ytarjim	'he translates'	tarjim!	'Translate!'
ySalfi9	'he slaps s.o.'	Salfi9!	'Slap!'
ygahwi	'he gives coffee'	gahwi!	'Give coffee!'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Composition

Talk about the location of each of the following states or countries. Use the following words: mtadd, ʃarg, Garb, ʃamaal, januub, januub Garb, januub ʃarg, etc.

ARIZONA	CALIFORNIA	MICHIGAN	OHIO	TEXAS
YEMEN	SAUDI ARABIA	JORDAN	EGYPT	OMAN

Drill 2 Double Substitution

mu9ʕam aT-Tullaab fi S-Saff.
'Most of the students are in class.'

1. people -- marketplace
2. embassies -- over there
3. dowries -- expensive
4. bakers -- in Sanaa
5. typists -- in the office
6. educated (p.) -- outside Yemen
7. car accidents -- in Sanaa
8. clinics -- here
9. pharmacies -- hospitals
10. customs -- old
11. words -- in the book
12. factories -- foreign
13. men -- reception hall
14. meetings -- at night

Drill 3 Repetition

1.	xaliij 9adan	'the Gulf of Aden'
2.	xaliij 9umaan	'the Gulf of Oman'
3.	xaliij al-maksiik	'the Gulf of Mexico'
4.	xaliij kalifoornya	'the Gulf of California'
5.	'al-xaliij al-9arabi	'the Arabian Gulf'

Drill 4 Composition

T: Yemen -- Republic
S: ma9 muruur az-zaman Saar al-yaman jumhuuriyya.
'With the passage of time, Yemen became a republic.'

1. Iraq -- republic
2. Morocco -- monarchy
3. Iran -- Islamic republic
4. the Emirates -- state
5. clerk -- director
6. workman -- mason
7. teacher (f.) -- principal
8. Libya -- republic
9. North Yemen -- Y.A.R.
10. Y.A.R. -- democracy

Drill 5 Completion (cued)

ba9 al-'iHtilaal al-bariiTaani Saarat miSr malakiyya.
'After the British occupation, Egypt became a monarchy.'

1. French -- Lebanon -- republic
2. French -- Syria -- republic
3. British -- Morocco -- monarchy
4. British -- Jordan -- monarchy
5. British -- Abu Dhabi -- Emirate
6. Turkish -- Egypt -- monarchy

Drill 6 Double Substitution

'al-guwwaat al-bariiTaaniyya fi l-januub
'the British armed forces in the south'

1. British -- north
2. Persian -- north
3. American -- south
4. Syrian -- northeast
5. French -- east
6. Iraqi -- north
7. Saudi -- west
8. Yemeni -- southwest

Drill 7 Expansion

Expand the phrases in Drill 6 above by adding 'al-'iHtilaal 'occupation', thus: guwwaat al-'iHtilaal al-bariiTani fi l-januub. 'The British occupation forces are in the south.'

Drill 8 Double Substitution

ma'rib ma9ruufa b-l-'aaθaar.
'Mareb is known for antiquities.'

1. Hudaida -- fish
2. Hajja -- coffee beans
3. Sanaa -- old markets
4. Kuwait -- petroleum
5. Sa'da -- agriculture
6. 'ibb -- agriculture
7. Sanaa -- big buildings
8. Hajja -- qat
9. Detroit -- car factories
10. Manakha -- antiquities

Drill 9 Substitution

Repeat Drill 8 above, substituting maʃhuura b- 'famous for' for ma9ruufa b-.

Drill 10 Question -- Answer

T: 'as-su9uudiyya 'Saudi Arabia'
S_1: maa niẓaam al-Hukm fi s-su9uudiyya?
'What is the system of government in Saudi Arabia?'
S_2: niẓaam al-Hukm fi s-su9uudiyya malaki.
'The system of government in Saudi Arabia is monarchic.'

1. Y.A.R.
2. Libya
3. U.S.S.R.
4. U.A.E.
5. Iraq
6. Tunisia
7. South Yemen
8. U.S.A.
9. Jordan
10. Morocco
11. Lebanon
12. France

Drill 11 Conjugation

bada' marHala jadiida. 'He began a new phase.'

1. hiy
2. 'anti
3. 'antu
4. 'ana
5. 'iHna
6. hum
7. 'ant
8. hin
9. 'antayn

Drill 12 Variable Substitution

bada' marHala jadiida. 'He began a new phase.'

1. 'ana
2. 9amal
3. 'iHna
4. hiy
5. huw
6. to study
7. hum
8. 'iHna
9. to meet
10. to buy homes
11. huw
12. hum

Drill 13 Learn the following phrases and sentences:

1. 'al-xaliij al-9arabi maʃhuur b-l-batrool w-l-'asmaak.
   'The Arabian Gulf is famous for oil and fish.'
2. ma9 muruur az-zaman Saar mudiir al-madrasa.
   'With the passage of time, he became the principal of the school.'
3. 'as-siyaasa l-xaarijiyya fi l-yaman al-januubi
   'Foreign policy in South Yemen'
4. 'al-gawaaniin fi muʢam al-bilaad al-9arabiyya min aʃ-ʃarii9a l-'islaamiyya. 'Laws in most of the Arab countries are based on Islamic Sharia.'
5. gamat Huruub 'ahliyya Tawiila. 'Long civil wars broke out.'
6. gaamat θawra w-Gayyarat niʢaam al-Hukm.
   'A revolution took place and changed the system of government.'

Drill 14 Question--Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. maa Huduud al-yaman fi l-Garb?
2. mata Saar al-yaman yamanayn?
3. 'ayn kaan al-'iHtilaal al-bariiTaani?
4. maa 'ism al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali ar-rasmi?
5. maa 'ism al-yaman al-januubi r-rasmi?
6. mata nsaHabat guwwaat al-'iHtilaal al-bariiTaani min al-januub?
7. 'ayʃ kaan niʕaam al-Hukm fi l-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali gabl aθ-θawra? maa niʕaam al-Hukm ðalHiin?
8. f-ayy Hiin gaamat al-Huruub al-'ahliyya?

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape and answer the following questions:

1. maa huw niʕaam at-ta9liim fi l-bilaad al-9arabiyya?
2. kam jaami9a fi l-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya?
3. bih duur mu9allimiin w-duur mu9allimaat fi l-yaman?
4. bih maraakiz tadriib? 'ayn hiy?
5. jaami9at San9a 'ahliyya 'aw Hukuumiyya? man mudiiraha?
6. bih madaaris 'ahliyya fi l-yaman?
7. 'at-ta9liim fi l-yaman b-fuluus 'aw balaaʃ?
8. bih mraakiz ta9liim al-luGa l-'ingiliiziyya fi San9a? kam markaz?

U N I T 5 2

I. TEXT

'al-mudun fi l-yaman

'ahamm al-mudun fi l-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya San9a w-ta9izz w-l-Hodayda w-Sa9da w-Hajja w-'ibb w-ðamaar w-maarib. San9a hiy al-9aaSima w-tiʃtahir b-l-mabaani w-l-'aswaag w-l-'amaakin al-'aθariyya. ta9iizz tiʃtahir b-jawwwaha l-Haali w-r-raTb fi S-Sayf li-'annaha 9ala l-baHr al-'aHmar. maʃhuura b-l-'asmaak w-sukkaanaha Tayyibiin. 'ibb madiina ziraa9iyya w-biha 'aaθaar Himyariyya w-Hammaam 9ali. Hajja 9ala murtafa9aat jabaliyya w-tiʃtahir b-l-bunn w-ziraa9at al-gaat. maarib fiiha sadd maarib w-kaðaaliik ma9bad aʃ-ʃams. Sa9da markaz muhimm fi ʃ-ʃamaal 9ala l-Huduud as-su9uudiyya w-biha tijaarat al-'asliHa w-l-'a9siba.

San9a hiy al-markaz al-'idaari w-s-siyaasi w-l-'igtiSaadi Hagg ad-dawla. 9adad sukkaanaha ðalHiin Hawaali 'arba9miyat nasama. San9a mugassama 'ila Haaraat minha Haarat al-xarraaz w-Haarat TalHa w-T-Tawaʃi w-biha 'aswaag miθl suug al-milH w-suug al-bagar w-suug al-gaat. biha suur w-'abwaab. maabiʃ ðalHiin Gayr baab al-yaman w-baab al-gaa9 w-baab ʃagaadiif. biha Hammaamaat 'akθar min 9iʃriin hammaam miθl Hammaam as-sulTaan w-Hammaam ʃukr w-Hammaam al-gawniya w-Hammaam suug al-bagar.

min al-'amaakin as-siyaaHiyya w-l-'aθariyya fi San9a 'al-matHaf al-waTani.bih makaan xaarij San9a, ya9ni fi ʃamaal ʃarg San9a huw waadi ʂahr w-'amaakin θaaniya Hawl San9a miθl ar-rawʂa w-ʃiibaam w-kawkabaan.

II. TRANSLATION

Cities in Yemen

The most important cities in the Yemen Arab Republic are Sanaa, Ta'iz, Hudaida, Sa'da, Hajja, Ibb, dhamar, and Ma'rib. Sanaa is the capital city and it is famous for its buildings, marketplaces, and archaeological sites. Ta'iz is famous for its fine weather. Hudaida

is the main seaport; its weather is hot and humid in the summer because it lies on the Red Sea. It is known for its fish and its friendly inhabitants. Ibb is an agricultural city and has a lot of rain. In Dhamar there are rocks for building, Himyarite ruins and Ali's Hammam (public bath). Hajja is situated on mountainous elevations and is famous for its agricultural production of coffee and qat. Ma'rib has the Ma'rib Dam and the Sun Temple. Sa'ada is in the North on the Saudi border and is known for trade in weapons and daggers.

Sanaa is the administrative, political, and economic center of the State. The number of its inhabitants now is approximately 400,000 souls. Sanaa is divided into quarters; among them are the quarters of Al-Kharraz, Talha, and the Salt Market, the Cattle Market, and the Qat Market. It has a city wall and gates. There is none (of the gates) left (now) except al-Yemen Doorway, Al-Qa' Doorway and Shagadif Doorway. It has public baths--more than twenty public baths--such as Al-Sultan Bath, Shukr Bath, Al-Gawniya Bath, and the Cattle Market Bath.

Among the archaeological sites and places of interest (to tourists) in Sanaa is the National Museum. There is a place outside Sanaa to the northeast which is (called) Wadi Dhar, and other places around Sanaa, such as Rawdha, Shibam, and Kawkabaan.

III. VOCABULARY

muhimm	(-iin) important. elat. 'ahamm
Sa9da	Sa'da, city in the Y.A.R.
Hajja	Hajja, city in the Y.A.R.
ðamaar	Dhamar, city in the Y.A.R.
maarib	Ma'rib, city in the Y.A.R.
9aaSima	(9awaaSim) capital city
ʃtahar (b-)	VIII to be famous (for)
mabna	(mabaani) building. syn. binaaya p. -aat
'aθari	adj. archaeological
miinaa'	(mawaani') seaport

ra'iisi	adj. main, principal
Haarr	adj. hot. elat. 'aHarr
raTb	adj. humid. elat. 'arTab
li'anna	conj. because. syn. 9ala sibb
'al-baHr al-'aHmar	The Red Sea
samak	coll. fish. p. 'asmaak
sukkaan	inhabitants. s. saakin
'amTaar	rain. s. maTar
Hajar	coll. rocks; stone. p. Hijaar
binaa'	v.n. building, construction
Himyari	(-yyiin) Himyarite
Hammaam	(-aat) public bath
murtafa9	(-aat) elevation, elevated place
jabal	(jibaal) mountain
jabali	adj. mountainous; rocky
ziraa9a	v.n. planting; farming
sadd	('asdaad) dam
ma9bad	(ma9aabid) temple
silaaH	('asliHa) weapons, arms
9asiib	('a9siba) dagger
markaz	(maraakiz) center
'igtiSaad	v.n. economy; economics
'igtiSaadi	adj. economic; economical
9adad	('a9daad) number; numeral. 9adad sukkaan number of inhabitants
nasama	(no plural) soul. 'alf nasama 1,000 souls (inhabitants)
mugassam ('ila)	(-iin) p.p. divided (into)
bagar	coll. cows. unit bagara
suur	('aswaar) wall, surrounding wall
baab	('abwaab) gate, doorway
siyaaHa	v.n. tourism

waadi	(widyaan) valley
Hawl	prep. around, round

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

ra'iis	(ru'asaa') president; chairman
'al-9aalam	the world

V. GRAMMAR

Verbal Nouns

Verbal nouns, the great majority of which are derived from verbs, which express or name the underlying notion of the verb, as opposed to concrete nouns, e.g., 'idaara 'administration, management' denotes the act of administering or managing as opposed to mudiir 'manager, director', which denotes the person whose job is administering or managing. Verbal nouns may indicate an event, a function, a state, or a quality of the underlying verb, as will be shown below.

Verbal nouns are normally used with the article prefix unless they are the first term in a noun construct:

'al-'iglaa9 saa9at sitt.	'Departure is at six o'clock.'
'iglaa9 aT-Tayyaara	'The departure of the plane'
min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya	'from start to finish' Lit., 'from the beginning to the end'
bidaayat al-kitaab	'the beginning of the book'
nihaayat al-film	'the end of the film'

If the verbal noun expresses a single occurrence or "some, certain", it does not take the article prefix:

haaði bidaaya Tayyiba.	'This is a good beginning.'
maabiʃ nihaaya.	'There is no end.'

Class I

The derivation of verbal nouns from Class I verbs is irregular. There are many patterns of the verbal noun, which might be of use to the student, but it is best to learn the verbal noun along with its verb root. The following are the most common patterns of Class I triradical verbs:

1. fu9uul

Verb		Verbal Noun	
daxal	'to enter'	duxuul	'entry; entrance'
xaraj	'to go out, exit'	xuruuj	'exit, going out'
wuSul	'to arrive'	wuSuul	'arrival'
marr	'to pass'	muruur	'passing; traffic flow'
riji9	'to return'	rujuu9	'going back, returning'
wugaf	'to stop; to stand up'	wuguuf	'stopping; standing up'
rakab	'to ride'	rukuub	'riding'
ragad	'to sleep'	ruguud	'sleep, sleeping'
sakat	'to be silent'	sukuut	'silence'
rasab	'to fail (in an exam)'	rusuub	'failure'
ga9ad	'to sit down'	gu9uud	'sitting down'
HaSal	'to occur'	HuSuul	'occurrence, taking place'
Haʂar	'to come; to attend'	Huʂuur	'coming; attendance'
jalas	'to sit down'	juluus	'sitting down'

2. fa9l

Sabar	'to be patient'	Sabr	'patience'
'akal	'to eat'	'akl	'eating'
barad	'to get cold'	bard	'cold weather'
gaal	'to say'	gawl	'saying; speech'
Hamad	'to praise'	Hamd	'praise, compliment'
naam	'to sleep'	nawm	'sleep'

naga∫	'to engrave'	nag∫	'engraving; decoration'
gatal	'to kill s.o.'	gatl	'killing'
dafa9	'to pay'	daf9	'paying'
fataH	'to open'	fatH	'opening'
Gasal	'to wash'	Gasl	'washing'
Tabax	'to cook'	Tabx	'cooking'
'axaδ	'to take'	'axδ	'taking'

fa9l is also a pattern for some triradical double verbs:

jarr	'to withdraw; to take'	jarr	'withdrawal; taking'
laff	'to turn, e.g., left'	laff	'turning'
∫all	'to carry; to steal'	∫all	'carrying; stealing'
9add	'to count'	9add	'counting'

3. fi9aala

('adaar)	'to direct, manage'	'idaara	'administration'
bada'	'to begin, start'	bidaaya	'beginning'
(ntaha)	'to finish, end'	nihaaya	'end; cessation'
(taajar)	'to trade, do business'	tijaara	'trade; business'
wilid	'to be born'	wilaada	'birth'
zaad	'to increase'	ziyaada	'increase'
daras	'to study'	diraasa	'studying, studies'
Sana9	'to manufacture'	Sinaa9a	'industry; manufacturing'
gara'	'to read'	giraa'a	'reading'
katab	'to write'	kitaaba	'writing'
saag	'to drive'	siwaaga	'driving'
zaar	'to visit'	ziyaara	'visit, visiting'

4. fa9aal

simi9	'to hear'	samaa9	'hearing; listening'
samaH	'to forgive'	samaaH	'forgiveness'
(not used)		'amaan	'safety; security'

silim	'to be safe'	salaam	'peace; security'
najaH	'to be successful'	najaaH	'success'

5. fi9l

Hilim	'to dream'	Hilm	'dream'
9ilim	'to know'	9ilm	'knowledge'
ʂaag	'to become narrow'	ʂiig	'narrowness'

It should be pointed out that some verbal nouns are also count nouns, e.g., gawl 'saying; speech' could also mean 'a saying'; it has the plural 'agwaal 'sayings, proverbs'; ziyaada 'increase, increment' means 'an increment, an increase' has the plural ziyaadaat.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Double Substitution

'ahamm al-mudun fi l-yaman San9a w-l-Hodayda.
'The most important cities in Yemen are Sanaa and Hudaida.'

1. places of interest -- National Museum and Wadi Dhar
2. ministries -- Foreign Ministry and the Ministry of Agriculture
3. archaeological places -- Ma'rib and Dhamar
4. libraries -- Public Library and the Grand Mosque Library
5. airport -- Sanaa Airport and Hudaida Airport
6. agricultural regions -- Sanaa and Ibb

Drill 2 Double Substitution

San9a 9aaSimat al-jumuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya.
Sanaa is the capital of the Yemen Arab Republic.

1. Riyadh -- Saudi Arabia
2. Washington -- U.S.A.
6. Beirut - Lebanon
7. Baghdad -- Republic of Iraq

3. Amman -- Jordan
4. Paris -- France
5. Doha -- Qatar
8. Morocco -- Rabat
9. Abu Dhabi -- U.A.E.
10. Muskat -- Oman

Drill 3 Completion

San9a tiʃtahir b- .... 'Sanaa is famous for ...."

1. 'ibb tiʃtahir b- ....
2. ta9izz tiʃtahir b- ....
3. Sa9da tiʃtahir b- ....
4. 'al-Hodayda tiʃtahir b- ....
5. maarib tiʃtahir b- ....
6. Hajja tiʃtahir b- ....
7. Detroit tiʃtahir b- ....
8. Arizona tiʃtahir b- ....
9. 'as-su9uudiyya tiʃtahir b- ....
10. California tiʃtahir b- ....

Drill 4 Combination

Combine the following sentences, using li'anna 'because'.

Example:

'aT-Tullaab najaHu fi l-'imtiHaan. darasu gawi. →
'aT-Tullaab najaHu fi l-'imtiHaan li'annahum darasu gawi.
'The students passed the exam. They studied hard.' →
'The students passed the exam because they studied hard.'

1. jaww al-Hodayda raTb. hiy 9ala l-baHr al-'aHmar.
2. Hajja baarida. hiy 9ala murtafa9aat jabaliyya.
3. San9a l-9aaSima. hiy al-markiz al-'idaari w-s-siyaasi.
4. hum yiʃtu ya'kulu. hum jaawi9iin gawi.
5. xalas θiyaaba w-taHammam. 'al-yawm al-jum9a.

6. 'al-laHm Gaali fi s-suug. maabiʃ laHm kaθiir fi s-suug.
7. 'i9jabatni San9a. 'al-jaww fiiha Haali kull as-sana.
8. numt Tuul al-layl. kunt taa9ib.
9. fallatt min al-9amal. ma HaSSalt ziyaada muddat sanatayn.
10. nuskun fi bayt kabiir. 'iHna 'usra kabiira.

Drill 5 Completion

Complete the sentences in Drill 3, substituting maʃhuura b- for tiʃtahir b-, 'it is famous for...'

Drill 6 Transformation -- Translation

Combine the following sentences, using the verbal noun.

Example: daras 9arabi. riji9 'ila l-yaman. →
daras 9arab ba9d ar-rujuu9 'ila l-yaman.

'He studied Arabic. He returned to Yemen.' →
'He studied Arabic after returning to Yemen.'

1. He went to the Passports Department. He arrived in Sanaa.
2. I studied business administration. I studied English.
3. We went to Hudaida. We returned to Ibb.
4. Did you return to school? You failed in the examination.
5. Were they able to leave the airport? They paid the airport tax.
6. I could not sleep well. I opened the windows.
7. We bought a car. We withdrew money from the bank.
8. She heard the news. She read the newspaper.
9. She returned home. She visited the patient in the hospital.
10. They lived in the house. They paid the house rent.

Drill 7 Substitution -- Translation

takallamt ma9aahum 9an ziyaarat ar-ra'iis.
'I talked to them about the President's visit.'

1. riding camels
2. studying Arabic
3. cooking Yemeni food
4. paying the money
5. washing the clothes
6. business administration
7. glass industry
8. visiting the National Museum
9. end of the film
10. studying in America
11. driving cars
12. peace in the world

Drill 8 Substitution -- Translation

jarrabt 'asuug as-sayyaara. 'I tried to drive the car.' →
jarrabt siwaagat as-sayyaara. 'I tried driving the car.'

1. enter from here
2. ride camels
3. get a job
4. attend the meeting
5. sleep in the afternoon
6. study at night
7. deal in weapons
8. write in Arabic
9. drive the car
10. exit from this street
11. return to work
12. open the door

Drill 9 Composition

Derive verbal nouns from the following verbs and use each in a meaningful sentence:

daxal	wuSul	rakab	jalas	'akal
gatal	fataH	9add	bada'	gara'
katab	zaar	najaH	zaad	naam

Drill 10 Translation

1. The most important cities in America are Washington, New York, Chicago, and Los Angeles.
2. Sanaa is famous for its buildings, marketplaces, and archaeological sites.
3. Detroit is famous for its car factories.
4. There are famous ruins in Ma'rib and Himyarite antiquities in Dhamar.
5. Sanaa is the capital of the Y.A.R. and it is the political center of the State.
6. After obtaining a degree in education, I returned to Yemen and taught English at the English Language Institute.
7. What are you going to do after returning to Yemen?
8. I would like to talk to you about my visit to Ma'rib and Dhamar.
9. The official name of South Yemen became the Democratic Republic of Yemen after the withdrawal of the British armed forces.
10. A revolution broke out in 1963 after long civil wars and a new era began toward the end of the seventies.

U N I T 5 3

I. TEXT

'al-Haaǧir yi9lim al-Gaayib

Taaha: 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

'aHmad: wa 9alaykum as-salaam wa raHmatu LLaahi wa barakaatuh.

Taaha: 'al-yawm 'absirak Haamil ʃee'. musaafir 'aw laa?

'aHmad: 'iih 'agula-lak? musaafir?

Taaha: maa huw haaδa llaδi ma9aak Haamila 9ala ṣahrak?

'aHmad: haaδih mafraʃa w-haaδawlaa' alliδi fi yaddi daaxil al-miSarr al-bilayzigaat Hagg al-mara.

Taaha: Tayyib w-ayn 9a-tsiir bihim? 9aa'iilatak fi bayt 'ahlaha?

'aHmad: maaʃi. waLLaah 'innaha fi baytaha laakin 'ana bi-Haaja 'ila zalaT w-ʃaa-siir 'abii9ahum.

Taaha: tbii9 Hilyat al-mara w-l-mafraʃa?

'aHmad: maa 'asabbir fi wagt al-Haaja?

Taaha: w-maa haaδih al-Haaja lliδi xallatak tbii9 al-ladaa?

'aHmad: 'ant daari 'inna Hna δalHiin fi ʃahr diisambar w-l-mu'assasaat al-xadamiyya kull waaHida tiʃti l-Hisaab Haggaha min 'awwal as-sana 'ila l-yawm. 'al-ba9ṣ li-muddat sitt 'aʃhir w-l-ba9ṣ 'arba9 'aʃhir w-haakaδa.

Taaha: w-ant maa huw aδ-δanb allaδi 9alayk? layʃ ma Haasabt kull ʃkahr fi wagta badal-ma tugtul nafsak haakaδa?

'aHmad: 'allaδi yisma9ak yguul maʃ 'ant daari.

Taaha: Saddigni 'ana maaʃ daari 'ila δalHiin.

'aHmad: fawaatir al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' w-t-talafoon ma bi-tjiiʃ 'illa b-s-sana marra w-mas'uul al-minTaga yaktub al-faatuura min ra'sa. law y'addu l-faatuura kull ʃahr 'ashal li-l-Gani w-l-fagiir w-SaaHib ad-daxl al-mutawassiT.

Taaha: 'a9tagid 'inna l-jihaat al-mas'uula fi haaδih al-mu'assasaat ma tigSid 'aδiyyat al-muwaaTin walaakin bih ṣuruuf tamna9 tawzii9 al-fawaatiir fi wagtaha kull ʃahr.

'aHmad: 9a-nsiir 'ila mu'assasaat al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' w-t-talafoon w-nTaalib b-'irsaal al-fawaatiir kull ʃahr w-ana muta'akkid

'inna l-mas'uuliin 9a-yit9aawanu ma9aana.

Taaha: w-ba9da kull waaHid yidfa9 Hisaaba w-huw murtaaH w-yşumm ladaat w-l-Haaşir yi9lim al-Gaayib.

II. TRANSLATION

Those Attending Will Inform Those Who Are Absent

Taha: Peace be upon you!

Ahmad: Peace and God's mercy and blessing be upon you.

Taha: I see you carrying something today. Are you travelling or not?

Ahmad: Oh! What shall I tell you? Travelling!?

Taha: What is this thing you are carrying on your back?

Ahmad: This is a rug and these things in the scarf on my hand are my wife's bracelets.

Taha: Where are you travelling with them? Is your wife in her folks' home?

Ahmad: No, she is (certainly) in her home, but I am in need of money and I am going to sell them.

Taha: Are you going to sell your wife's jewelry and the rug?

Ahmad: What shall I do in the time of need?

Taha: What is this need that made you sell your personal effects?

Ahmad: You know that we are in the month of December and each one of the (public) utility firms wants the bills paid from the beginning of the year till today; some want the account to be settled for six months and some others for four months, etc.

Taha: What is the sin you have committed? Why didn't you pay the bills for each month, instead of killing yourself in this way?

Ahmad: Those who have heard you think that you are not aware (of the way things are conducted here).

Taha: Believe me! I still do not know.

Ahmad: We get the water, electricity, and telephone bills once a year and the one in charge of the region (i.e., the meter reader) writes the bill any way he wants. It would be easier for the

rich, the poor, and those of middle income if they gave the bill for each month.

Taha: I believe the agencies concerned have no intention of harming the citizens. However, there are extenuating circumstances that prevent the distribution of bills every month.

Ahmad: We will go to the departments of water, electricity, and telephone and demand the sending of the bills every month, and I am sure the responsible officials will cooperate with us.

Taha: And then everyone will pay his bills happily and keep his family's belongings. Those in attendance will tell those who are absent.

III. VOCABULARY

Haaʂir	(-iin) act. part. present; attending. 'al-wagt al-Haaʂir the present time
'aʕlam	IV to inform, tell s.o.
Gaayib	(-iin) act. part. absent. opp. Haaʂir
raHma	v.n. mercy; compassion
baraka	(-aat) blessing; benediction
Haamil	(-iin) carrying
'iih!	interj. (expression of pain)
haaðih	demon pron. this (f.). syn. haaði
mafraʃa	(-aat, mafaariʃ) mat; rug
miSarr	(-aat) woman's scarf
bilayzig	(-aat) bracelet. syn. siwaara p. -aat
waLLaah	honestly, indeed. var. waLLa
Haaja	(-aat) need. bi-Haaja 'ila in need of. wagt al-Haaja the time of need
sabbar	II to make; to do
ladaa	personal effects, belongings
dara	(yidri) to know; to be aware of
daari	(-yiin) act. part. having known s.th.
mu'assasa	(-aat) foundation, establishment; firm

xidma	(xadamaat) service
xadami	adj. of service, rendering service. f. xadamiyya
'al-ba9ḍ	some (people, things, etc.)
w-haakaδa	and so on and so forth, etc.
δanb	(δunuub) sin, offense
Haasab	III to call to account; to settle an account with s.o.
badal-ma	(with foll. v.) instead of, in lieu of
haakaδa	adv. in this manner
Saddag	II to believe s.o.
SaaHib	('aSHaab) (with foll. genit.) possessor, owner; holder. SaaHib ad-daar the house owner, the landlord
daxl	income. ḍariibat ad-daxl income tax
9tagad	VIII to believe; to think
jiha	(-aat) authority, administrative agency
gaSad	(yigSid) to intend, have in mind
'aδiyya	v.n. harm; trouble
muwaaTin	(-iin) citizen, countryman
ḍarf	(ḍuruuf) circumstance, condition
mana9	(yamna9) to forbid; to prevent
wazz9 (9ala)	II to distribute (among)
tawzii9	v.n. distribution
Talab	(yaTlub) to demand, ask for
'arsal	IV to send s.o. or s.th.
'irsaal	v.n. act of sending s.o. or s.th.
muta'akkid	(-iin) act. part. certain, sure
ta9aawan	VI to cooperate
ḍamm	(yḍumm) to keep for onesele; to embrace

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

rabba	II to bring up, raise
'aδaa9	IV to broadcast
Haanig	(-iin) mad; angry
'akiid	adv. certainly

b-t-tamaam	adv. precisely
w-l-kamaal	
mablaG	(mabaaliG) amount, sum of money
9awwaḍ	II to compensate, recompense
kafa	(yakfi) to be enough, sufficient; to go far
maSruuf	(maSaariif) money spent; expenditure
'iḍaafi	adj. additional, extra
mas'uuliyya	(-aat) responsibility

V. GRAMMAR

Verbal Nouns: Classes II-V

The verbal nouns of Classes II-X follow predictable patterns. The patterns for verbal nouns of Class II verbs are taf9iil for sound verbs and taf9ila or taf9i9a for defective verbs:

Verb		Verbal Noun	
darras	'to teach'	tadriis	'teaching, instruction'
Hassan	'to have a haircut'	taHsiim	'improving'
kassar	'to smash'	taksiir	'smashing'
jaddad	'to renew'	tajdiid	'renewing, renovation'
sajjal	'to register'	tasjiil	'recording, registering'
9allam	'to teach'	ta9liim	'teaching, instruction'
jahhaz	'to provide'	tajhiiz	'providing'
jarrab	'to try'	tajriib	'trial'
kannas	'to sweep'	takniis	'sweeping'
naḍḍaf	'to clean'	tanḍiif	'cleaning'
xazzan	'to chew qat'	taxziin	'chewing qat'
'adda	'to give'	ta'diya	'giving'
rabba	'to bring up; to educate'	tarbiya	'education, upbringing'
Hayya	'to greet'	taHiyya	'greeting'
samma	'to name'	tasmiya	'naming'

The verbal noun associated with Salla 'to pray' is Salaa 'praying; prayer'.

Class III

Verbal nouns of Class III verbs have two patterns: mufaa9ala for sound verbs and mufaa9aa for defective verbs:

saa9ad	'to help'	musaa9ada	'help, assistance'
waafag	'to agree'	muwaafaga	'agreement'
Haawal	'to try'	muHaawala	'attempt; trial'
gaabal	'to meet'	mugaabala	'meeting; interview'
xaabr	'to telephone'	muxaabara	'telephone call'
laaga	'to encounter'	mulaagaa	'encountering'
Haaka	'to talk to s.o.'	muHaakaa	'talking to s.o.'

The verbal noun of saafar 'to travel', is safar 'travel(ling)'.

Class IV

The verbal nouns of Class IV verbs have the patterns 'if9aal for sound verbs and 'ifaa9a for defective verbs:

'akmal	'to complete'	'ikmaal	'completion'
'arsal	'to send'	'irsaal	'sending'
'i9jab	'to please'	'i9jaab	'pleasing'
'aðaa9	'to broadcast'	'iðaa9a	'broadcasting'

Class V

The verbal nouns of Class V verbs have the patterns tafa99ul, t(i)fi99aal, and fi99aala.

takallam	'to speak'	takallum	'speaking'

ta9ajjab	'to be amazed'	ti9ijjaab	'act of being amazed'
taGassal	'to wash oneself'	Gissaala	'act of washing'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution -- Translation

maa huw allaði ma9aak Haamila 9ala ðahrak?
'What is this thing (with you) that you are carrying on your back?'

1. in your hand
2. in the bag
3. on your head
4. in the newspaper
5. in your car
6. in the scarf
7. inside the bag
8. in the blanket

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

huw Haamil kiis fi yadda.
'He is carrying a bag in his hand.'

1. 'ana
2. suitcase
3. hiy
4. huw
5. bags
6. hum
7. bracelets
8. 'ant?
9. hin
10. bags
11. clothes
12. 'iHna

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

'ana bi-Haaja 'ila zalaT. 'I am in need of money.'

1. mat
2. service
3. huw
4. good income
5. sum of money
6. hum
7. cooperation
8. instruction
9. 'iHna
10. chewing qat
11. assistance
12. hin
13. education
14. sleep
15. increase

Drill 4 Conjugation

ʃaa-siir 'abii9ahum. 'I will go to sell them.'

1.	huw	5.	'antu	9.	hiy
2.	hum	6.	'anti	10.	'antayn
3.	hin	7.	'iHna	11.	'ana
4.	'ant	8.	'ana	12.	huw

Drill 5 Transformation

sabbar al-Gadaa'. 'He prepared lunch.'

1.	dinner	6.	'iHna	11.	'ant
2.	breakfast	7.	future	12.	imperative
3.	'ana	8.	hum	13.	'antu
4.	hiy	9.	coffee	14.	'anti
5.	lunch	10.	tea	15.	'antayn

Drill 6 Completion

'ant daari 'inna ðalHiin fi ʃahr diisambar.
'You know that we are now in the month of December.'

1. that he is going to sell his personal effects
2. that a friend in need is a friend indeed
3. that we are in need of a large income to pay the bills
4. that I believed you when you told me what the problem was
5. that intoxication has passed away and anxiety has come
6. that there should be more cooperation between us
7. that too many cooks spoil the broth
8. that Hudaida is hot and humid in the summer because it is on the Red Sea
9. that Sanaa is the political and economic center of the Y.A.R.
10. that the one-eyed in the country of the blind is king

Drill 7 Substitution -- Translation

'al-ba9ḍ ya9mal fi na-naar w-l-ba9ḍ ya9mal fi l-layl.
'Some work during the day and some work at night.'

1. know -- do not know
2. work -- play
3. ask for s.th. -- take s.th.
4. cooperate -- do not cooperate
5. rich -- poor
6. clean -- make dirty
7. sell jewelry -- buy jewelry
8. get married -- do not get married
9. lend money -- borrow money
10. pray -- do not pray
11. are present -- are absent
12. pass the exam -- fail in the exam

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

Haasabt al-mu'assasa fi 'aaxir as-sana.
'I settled the account with the firm at the end of the year.'

1. 'iHna
2. beginning
3. month
4. huw
5. ministry
6. bank
7. hum
8. landlord
9. restaurant
10. end
11. hotel
12. 'ana
13. driver
14. future
15. hum

Drill 9 Translation

This drill requires the use of badal min (+ verb) 'instead of'

1. Settle the account every month instead of killing yourself in this manner!
2. Borrow money instead of selling your personal effects!
3. Ask for assistance instead of doing it alone!
4. Buy food for your family instead of wasting (spending) your money on cars!

5. Buy a house instead of renting an apartment in a big building!
6. Telephone him instead of writing him a letter!
7. Drink coffee instead of drinking tea!
8. Spend the night at our house instead of sleeping in the hotel!
9. Walk instead of taking a taxi!
10. Buy the meat today instead of buying it tomorrow!

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

Base: Saddigni! 'ana maaʃ daari. 'Believe (m.s.) me! I do not know.'

Example: Believe (f.s.) them (m.)!
Saddigiihum! hum maaʃ daaryiin.
'Believe (f.s.) them (m.)! They (m.) do not know.'

1. Believe (m.s.) me!
2. Believe (m.p.) us!
3. Believe (f.s.) him!
4. Believe (f.p.) them (f.)!
5. Believe (m.s.) them (m.)!
6. Believe (m.p.) him!
7. Believe (f.s.) me!
8. Believe (m.p.) us!

Drill 11 Completion -- Cued

T: Gani -- fagiir 'rich -- poor'
S: 'aHsan li-l-Gani w-l-fagiir.
'It's better for the rich and the poor.'

1. kabiir -- SaGiir
2. Haaşir -- Gaayib
3. muwaaTin -- 'ajnabi
4. dawla -- muwaaTin
5. ba9iid -- gariib
6. Taalib -- mu9allim
7. mu'ajjir -- musta'jir
8. gadiim -- jadiid

Drill 12 Completion -- Translation

'a9tagid 'inna.... 'I believe that....'

1. This is better for the rich and the poor.
2. He is going to sell his wife's jewelry and pay the bills.
3. They are going to get married at the end of the summer.
4. The government has no intention of harming the citizens.
5. Cooperation is important among the citizens.
6. A telephone call is better than writing a letter to your folks.
7. They are going to walk instead of taking a taxi.

Drill 13 Substitution

Substitute 'ana muta'akkid 'inna 'I am sure that...' for 'a9tagid 'inna 'I believe that' in Drill 12 above.

VII. CONVERSATION

yaHya: 'absirak taa9ib w-Haanig. maa-lak?
9ali: dafa9t Hisaab al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' w-t-talafoon.
yaHya: kam kaan al-Hisaab? 'akiid mablaG kabiir miθl Haggana.
9ali: Hisaabana 'arba9a 'alf w-'arba9miya w-xamsa w-sittiin riyaal b-t-tamaam w-l-kamaal.
yaHya: 'aLLaah yi9iinak ya 'ax 9ali! min 'ayn lak haaδa l-mablaG kulla?
9ali: 'aLLaah yi9iin al-jamii9. bi9t al-mafraʃa w-l-ladaa Hagg al-mara. kayf 'agdar 'a9awwiʂ zawjati 9an al-mafraʃa w-l-ladaa? ma9aaʃi ma bi-yikfi fi l-'ayyaam al-9aadiyya llaδi ma fiihaaʃ maSaariif 'iʂaafiyya. 9alayy mas'uuliyyaat kull yawm.
yaHya: la Hawla wala guwwata 'illa b-l-laah!

U N I T 5 4

I. TEXT

'al-Hammaamaat

bih Hammaamaat fi San9a w-fi kull manaaTig al-jumhuuriyya. bih 'akθar min θamanTa9ʃar 'aw 9iʃriim Hammaam. 'ahamm al-Hammaamaat fi San9a Hammaam aT-Tawaaʃi w-Hammaam ʃukr w-Hammaam as-sulTaan w-Hammaam an-na9iim w-Hammaam al-mydaan w-Hammaam suug al-bagar. 'al-Hammaamaat gadiima gawi w-'aSlaha faarisiyya gabl al-'atraak. 'aHsanha 'agdamha.

kull Hammaam lah θalaaθaat madaaxil. fi kull madxal daraja mu9ayyana min al-Haraara. fi l-madxal al-'awwal yaxlis al-'insaan θiyaaba w-yilbas 'izaar walla manʃafa. bih mag9ad w-naafuura fi l-madxal al-'awwal. 'al-madxal aθ-θaani mutawassiT bayn al-Haraara w-l-buruuda. tag9ud 9ala sibb yuxruj al-9arag min jismak. 'al-madxal aθ-θaaliθ nsammii S-Sadr w-S-Sadr haaδa bih 'aHwaaʂ min al-mee' al-baarid w-l-mee' al-Haami. 'al-'insaan yasta9mil al-mee' b-l-gadr allaδi yTiiga Hasb Tabii9at jisma. fi kull makaan tag9ud fatra mu9ayyana. fi l-makaan aθ-θaaliθ ya'tiik al-mukayyis. 'al-mukayyis huw allaδi ykayyis b-l-kiis w-l-liifa. 'at-tadliik yaxtalif 9an at-takyiis. 'at-tadliik b-l-Hajar; 'al-'insaan yguum bih b-nafsa.

'al-Hammaamaat allaδi fi l-yaman taxtalif 9an al-Hammaamaat fi l-9iraag. 'al-Hammaamaat haana taHt saTH al-'arʂ baynama l-Hammaamaat fi baGdaad 9ala saTH al-'arʂ.

II. TRANSLATION

The Public Bath

There are public baths in Sanaa and in all the other regions of the Y.A.R. There are more than eighteen or twenty public baths. The most important public baths in Sanaa are Al-Tawashi Bath, Al-Naim Bath, Al-Maydan Bath, and the Cattle Market Bath. These public baths are very old; they are of Persian origin--before the Turks. The oldest of them are the best.

Each bath has three entrance halls. At each place there is a certain degree of temperature. At the first place people take off their clothes and wear waist-wrappers or towels. There are a bench and a fountain at this first place. The second place has average (between hot and cold) temperature. You sit there in order to perspire. We call the third place the Sadr, which has basins of hot and cold water. People use the amount of hot or cold water that they can stand, i.e., in accordance with their physical make-up. In each place you sit for a certain period of time. At the third place a masseur will come to you. A masseur is the one who rubs with a bag-shaped luffa. tadliik is different from takyiis. The former, tadliik, is rubbing with a pumice stone, which is performed by the person himself.

The baths in Yemen are different from those in Iraq. Baths here are below the surface of the earth, whereas those in Baghdad are at the ground level.

III. VOCABULARY

sulTaan	(salaaTiin) sultan, (absolute) ruler
'aSl	('uSuul) origin; source; descent
faarisi	(furs) Persian, characteristic of Persia. f. -yya
turki	(turk, 'atraak) Turkish, characteristic of Turkey. f. -yya
madxal	(madaaxil) entrance; entrance hall. opp. maxraj p. maxaarij
daraja	(-aat) degree (of temperature). darajat al-Haraara the temperature
mu9ayyan	(-iin) specified; certain
'insaan	(no p.) person, human being. 'al-'insaan man, human beings; people
'izaar	(mayaazir) waist-wrapper
mag9ad	(magaa9id) seat; bench
naafuura	(nawaafiir, -aat) water fountain
buruuda	v.n. coldness, coolness
9arag	sweat

jism	('ajsaam) body of a human being or an animal
Sadr	(Suduur) bosom; chest. Sadr al-makaan the foremost part of a room
Hawḍ	('aHwaaḍ) water basin; trough
gadr	v.n. extent, scope. 9ala gadr in proportion to, according to
Taag	(yTiig) to be able to bear or stand s.th.
Hasb	prep. according to
Tabii9a	v.n. nature, natural disposition; character
fatra	(-aat) period of time. syn. mudda
mukayyis	(-iin) masseur, esp. one who uses a luffa
kayyas	II to rub with a bath sponge or luffa
kiis	('akyaas) bag-shaped luffa
liif	coll. bath sponges, luffas. unit liifa
tadliik	v.n. act of rubbing with a pumice stone
takyiis	v.n. act of rubbing or massaging with a luffa
gaam b-	(yaguum) to undertake; to perform, do s.th.
b-nafsa	by himself. b-nafsi by myself
baynama	conj. while, whereas; but
saTH	('asTuH) surface. taHt saTH al-'arḍ beneath the surface of the earth

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

ntaxab	VIII to elect; to select
'intixaab	v.n. election; selection. p. -aat elections
tarjama	v.n. translation
htamm (b-)	VIII to be concerned (with) s.o. or s.th.
xtafa	VIII to disappear
kubur	(yakbur) to be, become old
stakbar	X to consider oneself great or important; to swell up with pride
stagall	X to be, become independent
kammiyya	(-aat) amount, quantity

waaTi	adj. low, not high. opp. 9aali. elat. 'awTa
9aali	adj. high. opp. waaTi. elat. 'a9la
bay9	v.n. selling. opp. ʃiraa'. 'al-bay9 w-ʃ-ʃiraa' buying and selling

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbal Nouns: Classes VI-X

Class VI

Class VI verbal nouns have two patterns: tafaa9ul for sound verbs and tafaa9i for defective verbs. Examples:

Verb			
tfaagad	'to check'	tafaagud	'checking'
ta9aawan	'to cooperate with each other'	ta9aawun	'cooperation'
taʃaawar	'to consult with each other'	taʃaawur	'consultation'
taHaaka	'to talk with each other'	taHaaki	'talking with each other'

Class VII

Class VII verbs are rare in SA. The verbal noun pattern is 'infi9aal.

ntaxab	'to elect; to select'	'intixaab	'election; selection'
nsaHab	'to withdraw, go back'	'insiHaab	'withdrawal (of troops)'

Class VIII

Most verbal nouns of Class VIII verbs are of the 'ifti9aal pattern. Examples:

Htafal	'to celebrate'	'iHtifaal	'celebration'
jtama9	'to have a meeting'	'ijtimaa9	'meeting'

ltabaj	'to hit oneself'	'iltibaaj	'hitting oneself'
xtalaf	'to be different'	'ixtilaaf	'difference'
ttafag	'to come to an agreement'	ittifaag	'agreeing, agreement'
Htarag	'to burn, be burned'	'iHtiraag	'combustion'
htamm	'to be concerned with s.o. or s.th.'	'ihtimaam	'concern'
mtadd	'to stretch'	'imtidaad	'stretching, extension'
rtaaH	'to rest; to be at ease'	'irtiyaaH	'state of being at ease'
xtafa	'to disappear'	'ixtifaa'	'disappearance'

Some Class VIII verbs have verbal nouns derived from their corresponding Class I verbs:

ʃtaka	'to complain'	ʃakwa	'complaining; complaint'
ʃtara	'to buy'	ʃiraa'	'buying'
Htaaj	'to need'	Haaja	'need; necessity'
ltabaj	'to hit oneself'	labj	'hitting'

Class IX

Verbal nouns of Class IX verbs are not used in SA.

Class X

Verbal nouns associated with Class X verbs have two patterns in SA: 'istif9aal for sound and doubled verbs and 'istifaala for hollow verbs. Examples:

1. Sound and Doubled: 'istif9aal

sta9mal	'to use; to utilize'	'isti9maal	'use; utilization'
stanfa9	'to benefit (by s.th.)'	'istinfaa9	'benefit(ing)'
staxbar	'to inquire'	'istixbaar	'inquiry'
stagbal	'to receive s.o.'	'istigbaal	'reception; receiving s.o.'

sta9add	'to get, be ready'	'isti9daad	'getting ready'
stamarr	'to continue to do s.th.'	'istimraar	'continuing, 'continuation'
staHagg	'to deserve, be worthy'	'istiHgaag	'deservingness, worthiness'
stakbar	'to consider oneself big'	'istikbaar	'considering oneself big'

2. Defective: 'istifaala

stagaal	'to resign'	'istigaala	'resignation'
stajaab	'to respond'	'istijaaba	'response; responding'
sta9aan	'to seek help'	'isti9aana	'help, assistance'

2. Quadriliterals

The pattern for quadriliteral verbal nouns is $C_1aC_2C_3aC_4a$.

tarjam	'to translate'	tarjama	'translating; translation'
gambar	'to be seated, sit down'	gambara	'sitting down'
Salfa9	'to slap s.o.'	Salfa9a	'slapping s.o.'
xarbaṬ	'to mess up s.o. or s.th.	xarbaṬa	'messing up s.o. or s.th.'
baxʃaʃ	'to tip; to bribe'	baxʃaʃa	'tipping; bribery'

Reduplicated quadriliteral verbs also have the same pattern for their verbal nouns:

kamkam	'to sew, sew up a sleeve'	kamkama	'act of sewing...'
dagdag	'to beat s.th. repeatedly'	dagdaga	'beating s.th. repeatedly'
laflaf	'to wrap up'	laflafa	'wrapping up s.th.'

Derived quadriliterals do not have verbal nouns associated with them; usually they have the same pattern as for simple quadriliterals:

ttarjam 'to be translated', 'itSalfa9 'to be slapped' and txarbaT 'to be mixed up' have the corresponding verbal nouns tarjama, Salfa9a, and xarbaTa, respectively.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Composition -- Cued

Example: 'ahamm al-mudun San9a. 'The most important city is Sanaa.

T: biggest -- cities -- N.Y.
S: 'akbar al-mudun New York. 'The biggest city is N.Y.'

1. tallest -- men -- 9ali
2. longest -- streets -- Airport Road
3. youngest -- boys -- Ahmad
4. farthest -- cities -- Sa'da
5. best -- hotels -- the Sheraton
7. easiest -- lessons -- this lesson
8. widest -- rooms -- reception hall
9. most expensive -- prices -- gas. prices
10. closest -- office-- post office
11. shortest -- girls -- Tagiyya
12. most important -- ministries -- Foreign Ministry

Drill 2 Substitution

Substitute the singular for the plural in Drill 1 above.

Example: 'ahamm madiina San9a. 'The most important city is Sanaa.'

T: biggest -- city -- N.Y.
S: 'akbar madiina N.y. 'The biggest city is N.Y.'

Drill 3 Transformation: positive → elative (+ suff. pron.)

Example: T: gadiim -- Hasan (+ hum) 'old -- good (+ them)'
S: 'agdamhum 'aHsanhum.
'The oldest of them are the best (of them).'

1. Hasan -- gadiim (+ ha)
2. Haali -- Tawiil (+ hin)
3. ðaki -- SaGiir (+ ha)
4. kabiir -- Gaali (+ hum)
5. wasx -- gadiim (+ ha)
6. SaGiir -- Haali (+ kin)
7. xafiif -- kabiir (+ hum)
8. naHiif -- Tawiil (+ na)
9. fagiir -- Tayyib (+ kum)
10. jadiid -- Gaali (+ ha)

Drill 4 Repetition

1. daraja mu9ayyana min al-Haraara 'a certain degree of temperature'
2. daraja mu9ayyana min al-buruuda 'a certain degree of coldness'
3. 9adad mu9ayyan min al-mukayyisiin 'a certain number of masseurs'
4. 9adad mu9ayyan min ar-rijaal 'a certain number of men'
5. mablaG mu9ayyan min al-fuluus 'a certain sum of money'
6. kammiya mu9ayyana min al-mee' 'a certain amount of water'
7. kammiya mu9ayyana min al-kutub 'a certain quantity of books'
8. 9adad mu9ayyan min al-muwaaTiniin 'a certain number of citizens'

Drill 5 Double Substitution

T: hot -- cold
S: mutawassiT bayn al-Haraara w-l-buruuda
'between hot and cold'

1. expensive -- cheap
2. humid -- dry
3. far -- near
4. old -- new
5. short -tall
6. rich -- poor
7. sitting down -- standing up
8. beginning -- end
9. narrow -- wide
10. high -- low

Drill 6 Conjugation

tag9ud fatra mu9ayyana. 'You (m.s.) sit for a specified period of time.'

1. huw
2. 'anti
3. 'ana
4. 'iHna
5. hum
6. 'antu
7. 'antayn
8. hin
9. hiy
10. 'ant
11. hum
12. 'antu

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

ga9ad fatra mu9ayyana. 'He sat for a certain period of time.'

1. 'iHna
2. Tawiila
3. hum
4. imperfect
5. hiy
6. gaSiira
7. future
8. 'antu
9. certain
10. 'ant
11. mudda
12. 'iHna

Drill 8 Double Substitution

'at-tadliik yaxtalif 9an ta-takyiis.
'Rubbing is different from massaging (with a luffa).'

1. 'al-'iHtifaal -- al-Hafla
2. 'al-'ijtimaa9 -- 'al-jam9
3. 'al-'ittifaag -- 'al-muwaafaga
4. 'al-labj -- 'al-mulaabaja
5. 'al-'isti9maal -- 'al-9amal
6. 'al-mugaabala -- 'al-'istigbaal
7. 'al-'istijaaba -- 'at-tajaawub
8. 'al-'isti9aana -- 'at-ta9aawun
9. 'al-gambara -- 'al-gamba9a
10. 'at-tarbiya -- 'at-ta9liim

Drill 9 Transformation: verb → verbal noun

Example: T: ta9aawanu ma9 al-mu'assasaaf. →
Talabu t-ta9aawun ma9 al-mu'assasaat.
'They cooperated with the establishments. →
They asked for cooperation with the establishments.'

1. ntaxabu ra'iis al-jumhuuriyya.
2. tarjamu kitaab "'alf layla wa layla".
3. taʃaawaru ma9 'abu l-Hareewa.
4. nsaHabat al-guwwaat al-bariiTaaniya min al-yaman.
5. 'ittafagu ma9 'aSHaab al-Hammaamaat fi San9a.
6. htammu b-ziyaarat ra'iis al-jumhuuriyya.
7. sta9addu li-l-'imtiHaan.
8. zaad Hisaab al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' Hasb gawaaniin ad-dawla.
9. gaabalu l-mudiir yawm ar-rabuu9.
10. 'akmalu diraasathum fi jaami9at San9a.

Drill 10 Translation

1. Public baths in Yemen are of Persian origin. They have been here for a very long time.
2. Each public bath has three entrance halls and each place has a certain degree of temperature.
3. There is a place in each public bath where you sit and perspire.
4. We call the third place in a public bath a Sadr in which you find hot and cold basins.
5. The public baths in Yemen are different from those in Iraq: here they are beneath the surface of the ground, but in Baghdad they are at the same level as the ground.
6. I cannot stand hot and humid weather. I need a place that is neither hot nor humid, i.e., a place that has average heat and humidity.

7. We demanded that the water, electricity and phone bills be sent every month. This is better for the rich, the poor and those of average income.
8. These are difficult circumstances for all of us. What can we do?
9. We cannot cooperate with this engineer. He does not respond to our requests. He ignores us. We went to the Minister of Public Works and asked for the engineer's resignation.
10. A certain number of citizens went to greet the President after his return from his visit to Saudi Arabia.

U N I T 5 5

REVIEW
(Units 51-54)

Drill 1 Question -- Answer

Answer the following questions:

1. maa huw 'ism al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali r-rasmi? maa hiy al-9aaSima?
2. 'al-yaman al-januubi jumhuuriyya walla malakiyya?
3. niẓaam al-Hukm fi l-yaman al-januubi diimograaTi?
4. mata nsaHabat al-guwwaat al-bariiTaaniyya min al-yaman al-januubi?
5. kam jumhuuriyya fi l-bilaad al-9arabiyya? kam malakiyya?
6. maa 9aaSimat al-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya?
7. yaxtalif al-jaww fi l-Hodayda 9an al-jaww fi San9a? maa huw al-'ixtilaaf?
8. bih 'aaθaar fi l-yaman? 'ayn mawjuuda?
9. 'ibb fi januub al-yaman? b-'ayya ʃee' tiʃtahir?
10. 'al-Hammaamaat fi l-yaman 'aSlaha turkiyya walla faarisiyya?
11. maa huw al-farg bayn al-Hammaamaat fi l-yaman w-l-Hammaamaat fi l-9iraag?
12. maa 9amal al-mukayyis? 'al-mukayyis huw al-mudallik?

Drill 2 Transformation: singular → plural

1. ba9d Harb 'ahliyya Saar niẓaam al-Hukm jumhuuri.
2. gaanuun al-Hukuuma 9ala l-Gani w-l-fagiir.
3. 'al-jiha l-mas'uula 9a-tit9aawan ma9 al-muwaaTin.
4. haaδih al-madiina miinaa' ra'iisi 9ala l-baHr al-'aHmar.
5. 'al-Haaẓir yi9lim al-Gaayib.
6. 'al-9aaSima hiy al-markaz al-'idaari w-s-siyaasi Hagg ad-dawla.
7. haaδeh al-mu'assasa ma tigSidʃ 'aδiyyat al-muwaaTin.
8. 'al-Hammaam bih Hawẓ w-naafuura w-mag9ad.
9. Haasab al-mu'assasa w-dafa9 mablaG kabiir fi 'aaxir as-sana.

10. haaʤa 'aHsan l-l-Gani w-l-fagiir w-SaaHib ad-daxl al-mutawassiT.
11. 'al-maSruuf fi haaʤa l-wagt aS-Sa9b kaθiir w-l-ma9aaʃ ma yikfi.
12. 'al-wizaara gaamat b-'iHtifaal kabiir ba9d 'intixaab ra'iis al-jumhuuriyya.
13. baa9 al-bilayzig w-l-mafraʃa 9ala sibb yidfaa9 Hisaab al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' w-t-talafoon.
14. Saddigni 'ana maaʃ daari 'ila ʤalHiin.
15. gambir! la tgawzib! ta9aal xazzin ma9aana!

Drill 3 Transformation: verb → verbal noun

Base: ba9d al_____ sirna 'ila l-bayt. 'After _____ we went home.'
T: jtama9 'to have a meeting'
S: ba9d al-'ijtimaa9 sirna 'ila l-bayt.
'After the meeting we went home.'

1. ntaxab	6. xaabar	11. zaar
2. ttafag	7. sajjal	12. laabaj
3. stagbal	8. xazzan	13. ʃtara
4. waafag	9. baa9	14. taHammam
5. gaabal	10. daras	15. taGassal

Drill 4 Transformation: perfect → imperfect or future

1. daxal w-gambar w-'akal ma9aana.
2. 9tagadt 'inna Gudwa 9uTla w-maabiʃ 9amal.
3. nsaHabat guwwaat al-'iHtilaal ba9d sanatayn.
4. 'al-mu'assasaat wazza9at al-fawaatiir kull θalaaθat 'aʃhir.
5. maabiʃ 'aHad 9awwaʤa 9an al-mafraʃa w-ladaat jahhaala.
6. ba9dima riji9na xazzanna w-sabbarna al-9aʃaa' w-tagahwayna.
7. stagall al-balad ba9d 'insiHaab al-guwwaat al-bariiTaaniyya.
8. stagbalna ra'iis al-jumhuuriyya fi l-gaSr al-jumhuuri 'ams.
9. tagaabalu w-ttafagu 9ala l-mahr w-xazzanu yawm al-xamiis.

10. stamarr fi l-9amal muddat sanatayn w-ba9da fallat w-saafar 'ila 'amriika.
11. 'arba9a ʃallu jamal w-l-jamal ma ʃallahum.
12. staHaggat ziyaada fi l-murattab. gaddamat Talab 'ila mudiir al-mu'assasa.

Drill 5 Antonyms

Give the word of opposite meaning for each of the following:

duxuul	wuSuul	gu9uud	rusuub
bay9	bidaaya	Hilm	tawsiix
fallat	baarid	yaabis	Gaayib
waaTi	'aaxir	gambar	Haami

Drill 6 Synonyms

Give the word that has a similar meaning for each of the following:

stagaal	ga9ad	'axbar	ta9liim
ragad	taHammam	naaʃif	gambar
9irif	muwaafåga	kallam	stigaala
'ixtilaaf	Haali	yaabis	muwaaTin

Drill 7 Derivation

Derive classes of verbs from the word given in paretheses and use each in a meaningful sentence.

1. (jama9): II, V, VIII.
2. (daras): II, V.
3. (gatal): II, III, V, Vi, VIII.
4. (labaj): II, III, VI, VIII.

5. (gaabal): IV, VI, VIII.
6. (jadiid): II, V, X.
7. (muslim): II, IV, X.
8. (muriʂ): II, VI.
9. (9ilm): II, IV, V, X.
10. (katab): II, III, V, VI.

Drill 8 Verbal Nouns

Derive verbal nouns from the following verbs and use each in a meaningful sentence.

1. wazza9: _____
2. rabba: _____
3. 9awwaʂ: _____
4. Haasab: _____
5. ta9aawan: _____
6. nsaHab: _____
7. Htall: _____
8. ntaxab: _____
9. gambar: _____
10. Salfa9: _____

Drill 9 Translation

1. Christians and Jews have churches, temples, and synagogues. Muslims have mosques.
2. The systems of government in most of the Arab countries are monarchies and republics.
3. There are three main religions in the world: Christianity, Judaism, and Islam.
4. The (degree of) temperature is high today; it is usually low at this time of the year.

5. Hudaida is (situated) on the Red Sea; it is the main seaport. The weather there is hot and humid in the summer.
6. The Y.A.R. Broadcasting Station broadcasts news four times a day.
7. I believed him. He told the truth. He usually tells the truth.
8. Congratulations on (your) passing the examination! What are you going to do next?
9. He will travel to England after completing his university studies.
10. A leopard cannot change his spots; you cannot eat your cake and have it.

Drill 10 True -- False

Indicate whether the following statements (based on TEXT of UNIT 54) are true or false:

1. 'al-Hammaamaat bada'at fi zaman al-'atraak.
2. darajat al-Haraara 9aaliya fi l-madxal al-'awwal min al-Hammaam.
3. darajat al-Haraara fi l-madxal aθ-θaani mutawassiTa.
4. yag9ud il-'insaan fi l-madxal aθ-θaaliθ 9ala sibb yuxruj al-9arag min jisma.
5. 'aS-Sadr fi l-makaan aθ-θaaliθ min al-Hammaam.
6. maabiʃ 'ixtilaaf bayn at-takyiis w-t-tadliik.
7. 'al-mukayyis fi Sadr al-Hammaam.
8. 'al-Hammaamaat fi l-9iraag taHt saTH al-'arδ.

U N I T 5 6

I. TEXT

'al-xitaan

Hasan: ya 'ax 9ali! gul-li maa huw al-xitaan law samaHt!

9ali: 'al-xitaan huw at-taThiir. 'iδa gaalu fulaan taxattan ya9ni taTahhar.

Hasan: 'al-xitaan farḍ fi l-'islaam?

9ali: fi l-Hagiiga huw sunna w-'aSbaH waajib fa tibsir kull an-naas yitba9uuha.

Hasan: man allaδi ysabbir al-xitaan?

9ali: fi z-zamaan al-gadiim kaan allaδi yguum bih huw al-muzayyin w-huw al-xaatin walaakin δalHiin gad gaamu n-naas ya'xuδu T-Tifl 'ila T-Tabiib 'aw fi mustaʃfa l-wilaada.

Hasan: kam ykuun 9umr al-walad lamman yaxtinuu?

9ali: b-Hasb guwwat aT-Tifl. 'al-9aada l-gadiima kaanu yaxtinu l-walad w-huw kabiir walaakin δalHiin mu9ḍam an-naas yaxtinu T-Tifl ba9d 'usbuu9 min al-wilaada.

Hasan: b-yaxtinu l-'inaaθ?

9ali: haana maaʃi, laakin fi tuhaama bass 9ala sibb ykuun al-jimaa9 'agall 9ind al-mara, w-haaδih 9aada mawjuuda fi muSr, tamaam?

Hasan: tamaam. gul-li 'ayʃ ysabbiru n-naas yawm al-xitaan?

9ali: 'al-xaal huw allaδi yatakaffal b-kull maSaariif al-xitaan w-ykuun awwal al-Haaḍiriin. ysabbiru SabuuH saa9at sab9 w-ykuun 9aadatan yawm al-jum9a. yatakawwan aS-SabuuH 9aadatan min 'anwaa9 min al-xubz miθl al-luHuuH w-l-gafuu9 w-maluuj aʃ-ʃa9iir. 'al-gafuu9 huw xubz δira ma9 9adas. ba9ḍ an-naas ysabbiru Hilba w-dagga w-marag miθl al-muHallabiyya w-l-mulawwaza w-l-burayk w-l-gaTaa'if.

II. TRANSLATION

Circumcision

Hasan: Brother Ali! Tell me what is circumcision, please.

Ali: Circumcision is cleansing or purging. If they say someone was circumcised, they mean he was cleansed.

Hasan: Is circumcision obligatory in Islam?

Ali: In fact, it is a habitual practice, but it became an obligation which all people adhere to.

Hasan: Who performs circumcision?

Ali: In the old times, the one who performed circumcision was the barber, but now people take the child to a doctor or to the maternity hospital.

Hasan: How old would a child be when he is circumcised?

Ali: It depends on the strength of the child. People used to have a child circumcised when he was mature, but now they have him circumcised when he is one week old.

Hasan: Are girls circumcised?

Ali: Not here, but they are circumcised in Tihama so that women might be less desirous of sexual intercourse. This is a custom practiced in Egypt, isn't it?

Hasan: Right. Tell me: "What do people do on the day of circumcision?

Ali: The maternal uncle is the one responsible for all the expenses of circumcision and he should be the first to come. People prepare breakfast, usually on Friday morning at seven. The breakfast is usually made up of kinds of bread, gafuu9 and barley bread. gafuu9 is corn bread mixed with lentils. Some people have fenugreek, chopped up beef stew, meat broth, roasted lamb and lamb stew for lunch. In addition, they have sweets, such as jelly, almond jelly, sweet pastry, and kunaafa.

III. VOCABULARY

xitaan	v.n. circumcision
taThiir	v.n. circumcision; cleansing, purging
fulaan	Mr. so-and-so
taxattan	V to be circumcised
taTahhar	V to be circumcised; to be cleansed
farḍ	(furuuḍ) religious duty or command
sunna	(sunan) habitual practice, customary procedure
'aSbaH	IV to become, come into being
waajib	(-aat) duty, obligation. waajib 9ala kull waaHid. It's everyone's duty.
xaatin	(xatana) one who performs circumcision
mustaʃfa l-wilaada	maternity hospital
b-Hasb	prep. according to. var. Hasb
guwwa	v.n. force; power, strength. p. -aat armed forces
'unθa	('inaaθ) female
tuhaama	Tihama, area along the western Arabian coast, south of Hijaz
jimaa9	v.n. sexual intercourse
muSr	Egypt. var. miSr
takaffal (b-)	V to be responsible or liable (for)
naw9	('anwaa9) kind, sort
luHuuH	coll. pancake bread. unit luHuuHa
gafuu9	coll. bread made from corn and lentils. unit gafuu9a
ʃa9iir	coll. barley. unit ʃa9iira
maluuj aʃ-ʃa9iir	coll. kind of bread, the main ingredient of which is barley. unit maluujat 'ʃa9iir
ðira	coll. corn. unit Habbat ðira
9adas	coll. lentils. unit Habbat 9adas
Hilba	coll. fenugreek
dagga	chopped up beef stew
marag	meat broth

guuzi	boiled or roasted lamb
Tabiix	lamb stew
muHallabiyya	king of jelly
mulawwaza	dessert made of sugar and almonds
burayk	pastry made of wheat flour mixed with eggs and sugar
gaTaa'if	also known as kunaafa, vermicelli baked in sugar, butter, and honey
kunaafa	See gaTaa'if.

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

baaʃar	III to attend to; to apply oneself
ta'akkad	V to be sure, certain
tawassaT	V to be in the middle
tawazza9	V to be distributed
samn	coll. shortening, ghee
TaHiin	coll. wheat flour
dagiig	coll. all kinds of ground cereal (generic description)
laban	coll. butter-milk
xubz muHammar	coll. toasted bread
xubz Galiiş	coll. wheat bread

V. GRAMMAR

Active Participles

In the previous lessons we had a number of active participles. Examples:

Haaşir	'attending; having attended; present'
Gaayib	'not attending; absent'
Haamil	'carrying; holding; porter, carrier'
raajii9	'returning; having returned'
kaatib	'having written; clerk; writer'

9aamil	'having made, done s.th.'
Taalib	'having asked for s.th.; claimant; student'
musajjil	'teaching or having taught s.th.; teacher'
musaafir	traveling; traveler, passenger'
mursil	'having sent; sender'
mudiir	'directing, managing; director'
miGbir	'dusty; windy'
muta'akkid	'being convinced; sure, certain'
mutawassiT	'being in the middle; medial, intermediate'

From the above examples it could be seen that an active participle is a verbal adjective depicting its referent as being in a state as a necessary consequence of the event, process or activity designated by the underlying verb. Like adjectives, active participles follow the noun they modify and agree with them in gender, number (the dual form is not used; the plural form is used instead), and definiteness, and are negated by maaʃ.

Examples:

Taalib Haaḍir ad-dars	'a student who has attended the lesson'
Haamil ladaata 9ala ra'sa	'carrying his belongings on his head'
huw 9aamil al-gahwa.	'He is the one who has made coffee.'
al-bint al-kaatibat ar-risaala	'the girl who has written the letter'
'an-nisaa' al-Haamilaat...	'the women (who are) carrying...'
'al-mudiira l-Haaliya	'the pretty director (f.)'
maaʃ Gaayib.	'He is not absent.'
maaʃ muta'akkid.	'I am not sure.'

Below are the patterns for the derivation of active participles from verbs of Classes I-V:

Class I

Sound: faa9il

Verb		Act. Part.	
riji9	'to return'	raaji9	'returning; having returned'
katab	'to write'	kaatib	'having written'
xatan	'to circumcise'	xaatin	'performing circumcision'
(ti9ib)	'to be tired'	taa9ib	'being tired'taa
(Hinig)	'to get angry'	Haanig	'having gotten angry'
(GuluT)	'to make a mistake'	GaaliT	'having made a mistake'
Hamal	'to carry'	Haamil	'carrying'

Defective: faa9i

maʃa	'to walk'	maaʃi	'walking'
dara	'to know; to be aware'	daari	'having known'
(fiʂi)	'to be empty, vacant'	faaʂi	'being empty, vacant'
bigi	'to last; to remain'	baagi	'remaining; remainder'
(gaʂa)	'to judge'	gaaʂi	'judging; having judged'
(maʂa)	'to pass (time)'	maaʂi	'having passed'
nisi	'to forget'	naasi	'having forgotten'

Hollow: faayi9, faawi9

(Gaab)	'to be absent'	Gaayib	'being absent'
raaH	'to go'	raayiH	'going'
ʃaal	'to lift; to carry'	ʃaayil	'carrying'
(jaa9)	'to be hungry'	jaawi9	'being hungry'

Class II

Sound: mufa99il, mifa99il

kayyas	'to massage'	mukayyis	'masseur; having massaged'
Gallag	'to shut, close'	m(u)Gallig	'being shut, closed'
darras	'to teach'	mudarris	'having taught; teacher'
'ajjar	'to rent, lease (tran.)'	mu'ajjir	'lessor; having leased'

gaddam	'to apply for s.th.'	mugaddim	'having applied'
naʕʕaf	'to clean'	munaʕʕif	'cleaning; cleaner'
xayyaT	'to sew'	mixayyiT	'having sewed; tailor'
xazzan	'to chew qat'	mixazzin	'having chewed qat'

Defective: mufa99i

'adda	'to give'	mu'addi	'having given; giver'
Hayya	'to greet'	muHayyi	'having greeted'
Salla	'to pray'	muSalli	'having prayed; worshipper'

Class III

Sound: mufaa9il

saafar	'to travel'	musaafir	'travelling; traveler'
(baaʃar)	'to attend to, apply oneself'	mubaaʃir	'attending; waiter'
saa9ad	'to help, assist'	musaa9id	'having helped; assistant'
waafag	'to agree; to approve'	muwaafig	'having agreed'
baarak	'to bless'	mubaarik	'having blessed'
jaawab	'to respond, answer'	mujaawib	'having answered; respondent'
Haawal	'to try'	muHaawil	'having tried'
gaabal	'to meet with s.o.'	mugaabil	'having met s.o.'
saayar	'to walk with s.o.'	musaayir	'walking with s.o.'

Defective: mufaa9i

laaga	'to find, encounter'	mulaagi	'having found or encountered'
9aafa	'to cure s.o.'	mu9aafi	'having cured s.o.'
Haaka	'talk to s.o.'	muHaaki	'having talked to s.o.'
raa9a	'to wait for'	muraa9i	'waiting or having waited for'

Class IV

Sound: muf9il or mif9il

'i9jab	'to please s.o.'	mu9jib	'having pleased s.o.'

'arsal	'to send'	mursil	'having sent; sender'
'absar	'to see'	mibsir	'having seen'
'akmal	'to complete'	mukmil	'having completed'
'ab9ad	'to go away'	mib9id	'having gone or been away'
'adxal	'to let s.o. in'	mudxil	'having let s.o. in'
'amlak	'to contract a marriage'	mumlik	'having contracted a marriage'
'asra9	'to hasten'	musri9	'hastening; speeding'
'axbar	'to inform'	mixbir	'having informed; informer'

Defective: muf9i

'ahda	'to give as a present'	muHdi	'having given...; giver (said of God)'

Hollow: mufii9

'aɓaa9	'to broadcast'	muɓii9	'having broadcasted; broadcaster'
('a)faad	'to benefit s.o.'	mufiid	'benefiting; useful'
'adaar	'to manage, direct'	mudiir	'directing; director'

Class V

Sound: mutaf99il

ta'akkad	'to be sure, certain'	muta'akkid	'being sure, certain'
ta9allam	'to learn'	muta9allim	'having learned; educated'
tawassaT	'to be in the middle'	mutawassiT	'being in the middle; medium, central'
tazawwaj	'to get married'	mutazawwij	'being or having been married'
takallam	'to speak'	mutakkalim	'speaking; having spoken; speaker'
tasallaf	'to borrow money'	mutasallif	'having borrowed money'
taxarraj	'to graduate'	mutaxarrij	'having graduated; a graduate'
tabaddal	'to be changed'	mutabaddil	'changing; changeable'

taGayyar	'to be changed'	mutaGayyir	'changing; changeable'
tawazza9	'to be distributed'	mutawazzi9	'having been distributed'

Defective: mutafa99i or mitfa99i

ta9aʃʃa	'to have dinner'	muta9aʃʃi	'having had dinner'
taGadda	'to have lunch'	mutaGaddi	'having had lunch'
taragga	'to be promoted'	mitraggi	'having been promoted'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Recognition

Find the active participle in each of the sentences below and give the verb it is derived from.

1. 'al-Haaşir yi9lim al-Gaayib.
2. Haamil ladaata 9ala ra'sa.
3. hum kaatibiin al-kitaab.
4. hiy taa9iba w-ana Haanig.
5. 'iHna maaʃ daariyiin 'ila ðalHiin.
6. hin mudarrisaat al-9arabi.
7. 'antu magaddimiin aT-Talab?
8. huw musaa9id al-mudiir.
9. hiy muraa9iyathum.
10. 'ant mutazawwij θintayn?

Drill 2 Composition

Derive an active participle from each of the verbs given below and use each in a meaningful sentence. The English meaning of the active participle is given in parenthesis:

bigi	(remaining; remainder)	waafag	(having agreed)
nisi	(having forgotten)	saayar	(having walked with s.o.)
jaa9	(being hungry)	'arsal	(having sent; sender)
'ajjar	(having leased; lessor)	tasallaf	(having borrowed money)
xazzan	(having chewed qat)	taGadda	(having had lunch)

Drill 3 Transformation: relative clause → active participle

Example: 'a9rif ar-rajjaal allaδi tazawwaj θintayn.
'I know the man who married two women.'
'a9rif ar-rajjaal al-mutazawwij θitayn.
'I know the man (who is) married to two women.'

1. 'absart ar-rijaal allaδi Hamalu S-Sanaadiig min haana.
2. 'al-banaat alli tazawwajayn kaanayn fi l-Hammaam.
3. 'allaδi ma yajiiʃ ma9 al-Hareewa ma yajiiʃ ba9daha.
4. 'allaδi yaxtin aT-Tifl kaan al-muzayyin 'aw al-Hallaag.
5. gaabalt allaδi 'arsal ar-risala 'ila l-waziir.
6. 'axi huw alli najaH fi kull al-'imtiHaanaat.
7. man allaδi tasallaf fuluus min al-bank al-waTani?
8. man allaδi takallamu ba9d ra'iis al-jumhuuriyya?
9. huw allaδi ta'akkad 'inna Gudwa l-9iid.
10. man alli 'arsal al-bargiya w-T-Tard?

Drill 4 Transformation: perfect → kaan + act. part.

Example: Hamal aS-Sanduug. 'He carried one box.' →
kaan Haamil aS-Sanduug. 'He was carrying the box.'

1. riji9 min muSr.
2. maʃayna ma9aahum.
3. raaHu 'ila l-xaatin.
4. saafarat 'ila Hajja.
5. 'asra9na 'ila l-9amal.
6. saayarha 'ila baytaha.
7. maa huw allaδi Hamalta?
8. ʃaalat al-bilayzig fi yaddaha.
9. ragadu saa9at xams.
10. daxalayn al-bayt.

Drill 5 Transformation: perfect → kaan + act. part.

Example: 'akal li-anna jaa9. 'He ate because he got hungry.' →
'akal li'anna kaan jaawi9. 'He ate because he was hungry.'

1. takallamu li'annahum Haḍaru l-'ijtimaa9.
2. ma ya9rifʃ al-jawaab li'anna Gaab 9an ad-dars.
3. 9alayhum mas'uuliyya kabiira li'annahum tazawwaju.
4. daawamt aS-SubH li'anna l-wagt tabaddal.
5. 'agdar 'atafaahum ma9aahum li'anni ta9allamt 9arabi.
6. taraggayt w-HaSSalt ziyaada li'anna l-waziir waafag.
7. numt li'anni ti9ibt.
8. ma daawamnaaʃ li'annana ta'akkadna Gudwa 9uTla.

Drill 6 Transformation: perfect → kaan + act. part.

Example: 'arsal al-bargiyya. 'He sent the telegram.' →
kaan mursil al-bargiyya. 'He had (already) sent the telegram.'

1. riji9 min as-suug.
2. Haḍaru l-'ijtimaa9.
3. Hamalt aS-Sanduug.
4. katabat ar-risaala.
5. saafarayn 'ila l-gaahira.
6. nisiina l-miftaaH.
7. Gibt 9an al-'ijtimaa9.
8. gaddam Talab 9amal.
9. waafagat 9ala s-safar.
10. xazzanu fi l-mafraj.

Drill 7 Conjugation

huw takaffal b-kull maSaarif al-xitaan.
'He was responsible for all the expenses of circumcision.'

1. 'iHna
2. hum
3. 'antu
4. hiy
5. 'ant
6. 'antu
7. hin
8. 'antayn
9. 'ana
10. 'anti
11. huw
12. hum

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

'akalt guuzi. 'I had (ate) roasted lamb.'

1. hum	6. fenugreek	11. 'ana
2. pancake bread	7. lamb stew	12. burayk
3. 'iHna	8. 'ant	13. wheat bread
4. lentils	9. beef stew	14. gafuu9
5. hin	10. toasted bread	15. corn

Drill 9 Translation

1. Prayer, pilgrimage, and fsting the month of Ramadhan are among the religious duties in Islam.
2. Girls are not circumcised in most places in Yemen.
3. Have you ever had Yemeni food? Among the breads I like are pancake bread and gafuu9.
4. The water, electricity and telephone bills were distributed last month.
5. I am sure that he is the one who has sent the letter.
6. I know the man (who is) carrying the mat on his head and going to sell it in the marketplace.
7. There is a difference between a mukayyis and a mudallik. The former massages with a luffa and the latter rubs with a pumice stone.

Drill 10 Question -- Answer (based on TEXT)

1. maa huw al-xitaan?	6. lilma yaxtinu al-bint?
2. 'al-xitaan farḍ 'aw sunna?	7. man yatakaffal b-l-maSaariif?
3. man huw al-xaatin?	8. mata ykuun al-xitaan?
4. 'ant taxattant?	9. fi 9umrak 'akalt Ta9aam yamani?
5. mata taxattant?	10. 'ayʃ 'akalt?

U N I T 5 7

I. TEXT

bayn zawj w-zawjata
(Suura min al-waagi9)

'az-zawj: hayya maaliʃ mugazzaza l-yawm?

'az-zawja: gaal-lak mugazzaza! gad ana 'aʃti 'agðif.

'az-zawj: 'a9uuðu billaah min aʃ-ʃayTaan ar-rajiim! lilma?

'az-zawja: w-9aadak bi-tguul lilma? ya rajjaal gad-li ʃahrayn w-ana 'aTlubak tiʃtarii-li zanna.

'az-zawj: zanna? kaθiira 9alayna ðalHiin. laakin....

'az-zawja: 9a-tirja9u tguuluu-li 'innakum madyuuniin w-l-murattab galiil w-l-'as9aar Gaaliya. gad ana daariya b-Hijajkum kullaha. waLLaah ma 9a-tijza9 9alayy waaHida. laakin al-yawm jarrayt al-ma9aaʃ?

'az-zawj: maa 9abbih?

'az-zawja: maa 'aʃti zanna bass. 'aʃti ba9da sikarbiil w-'iθnayn maSarraat, w-ma 'aʃti 'illa llaði gult lakum wala ma 9aad 'ajlis lakum fi bayt.

'az-zawj: 9ind 'abuuʃ 'aHsan?

'az-zawja: bayt 'abi 'a9azz-ali.

'az-zawj: w-min mayd az-zanna maa yguulu lana an-naas?

'az-zawja: yguulu maa 'iʃtu. maabiʃ 'illa 'ana llaði b-tuTlub zawjaha?

'az-zawj: laakin kull waaHid b-gadra. 'ana w-Tuul haaði l-mudda w-ma Hassayti b-Haalati w-ma 9irifti ma 'aʃtakiiliʃ. gult-liʃ madyuun madyuun.

(9abdaLLa ydagdig 9ala l-baab)

'az-zawj: man?

9abdaLLa: 'iftaH 'iftaH ya Husayn! 'ana 9abdaLLa.

'az-zawj: 'ahlan! tafaḍḍal!

9abdaLLa: la 'ana musta9jil bass 'aʃtiik tiji ma9i la-bayt 9ammak 9ala sibb nitHaaka min muʃkilatkum 'ant w-zawjatkum.

'az-zawj: ya 'axi gad ana gaani9 min haaδi l-Hayaa w-l-mara jannanatni.

9abdaLLa: ma yhimmakʃ. δalHiin gad nsiir la-9ind 9ammak w-ana gad taHaakayt ma9 9ammak w-laagayta mutafaahim la-l-mawδuu9.

II. TRANSLATION

Between Husband and Wife
(A Picture of the Real World)

Husband: Hey, what are you so grumpy about, today?

Wife: He says, "Grumpy"! I could throw up.

Husband: God save me from Satan! Why?

Wife: You're still asking why? Look, Mister! I have been asking you to buy me a dress for two months.

Husband: A dress! We can't afford it now, but . . . .

Wife: You are going to tell me again that you are in debt, your salary does not go far, and prices have gone up. I am well aware of all of your excuses, none of which, rest assured, will go unnoticed by me. Today you have been paid, haven't you?

Husband: What else is there?

Wife: What I would like to get is a dress only. I also would like to have shoes and two scarves. I don't want anything except what I've told you; otherwise I won't stay in your home.

Husband: Is it better at your father's?

Wife: My father's home is dearer, nicer for me.

Husband: Over a dress? What will people say about us?

Wife: Let them say what they like. Isn't there any other woman who asks her husband for anything?

Husband: Yes, but each one has one's own means. All this time you haven't sympathized with me (my situation) and you haven't

understood what I have been complaining to you about. I have told you so many times that I am in debt.

(Abdalla knocks at the door)

Husband: Who is it?
Abdalla: Open! Open! Husayn! It's me Abdalla.
Husband: Hi! Please come in!
Abdalla: No, thanks. I'm in a hurry. I just want you to come with me to your father-in-law's house in order to talk about the problem between you and your wife.
Husband: Brother, I'm fed up with this life and my wife has driven me crazy.
Abdalla: Don't worry! We will go to your father-in-law's and I have found him to be understanding and aware of the subject.

III. VOCABULARY

Suura	(Suwar) picture; form, shape
'al-waagi9	the real world; reality
hayya	interj. hey! imperat. Come! Come here!
mugazzaz	(-iin) p.p. grumpy; disgusted
gaɣaf	(yagɣif) to throw up, vomit
9aaɣ b-	(y9uuɣ) to seek protection from s.o. (usually God)
ʃayTaan	(ʃayaaTiin) devil. 'aʃ-ʃayTaan Satan
rajiim	adj. damned, cursed. 'aʃ-ʃayTaan ar-rajiim Satan, the cursed devil
9aad	(with suff. pron.) ...still. 9aadak b-tguul you still say
zanna	(-aat) woman's dress
madyuun	(-iin) p.p. indebted, in debt
murattab	(-aat) monthly salary. syn. ma9aaʃ p. -aat
Hijja	(Hijaj) pretext; excuse
jaza9 (9ala)	(yijza9) to pass, go unnoticed by s.o.

jarr	(yjurr) to receive, collect. jarr al-murattab. He collected his salary.
sikarbiil	(-aat) woman's shoes
maSarr	(-aat) woman's scarf, shawl
9aziiz	(-iin, 'a9izzaa') dear, beloved. elat. 'a9azz
min mayd	conj. because of; for the sake of
ʃta	VIII to like, desire; to want. imperf. yiʃti
Haala	(-aat, 'aHwaal) condition, state. syn. Haal
9amm	('a9maam) father-in-law
taHaaka	VI to talk with each other
gaani9 (min)	(-iin) fed up (with); tired (of)
jannan	II to infuriate, drive s.o. insane
hamm	(yhimm) to be of importance to s.o. yhimmini 'inna.... It's important to me that... ma yhimmakʃ! Don't worry!
mutafaahim	(-iin) act. part. understanding. mutafaahim l- aware of, cognizant of
mawḍuu9	(mawaaḍii9) subject; matter

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

tafaaham	VI to reach an understanding, come to an agreement
mutaḍaahir	(-iin) act. part. demonstrating; demonstrator
muntaxib	(-iin) act. part. having elected or selected; elector
miHtaaj	(-iin) act. part. in need of
Tallag	II to divorce
gtana9	VIII to be convinced
ksil	(-iin) lazy; indolent. f. kisle
ʃaal	(ʃiilaan) shawl for men

V. GRAMMAR

1. hayya! is an interjection which is used to call attention or to express surprise. It is also used as an uninflected imperative. Examples:

hayya! maaliʃ mugazzaza? 'Hey, what are you so grumpy about?'
9ali, 'aʃtiik. hayya! 'Ali, I want you. Come!'

2. gad with a following independent pronoun expresses emphasis and with a following perfect or imperfect tense verb expresses have, or have just..., with appropriate stem changes:

gad huw kaatib.	'He is a clerk.'
gad saar.	'He has (just) left.'
gad ana daari b-haaδa.	'I am well aware of this.'

The negative is signalled by the formula, ma gad... ʃ and the h- in huw 'he', hiy 'she', hum 'they (m.)', and hin 'they (f.)' is elided:

ma gadanaaʃ	'I am not'	ma gadumʃ	'they (m.) are not'
ma gaduwʃ	'he is not'	ma gadinʃ	'they (f.) are not'
ma gadiyʃ	'she is not'	ma gadantanʃ	'you (f.p.) are not'
ma gadantʃ	'you (m.s.) are not'	ma gadantuuʃ	'you (m.p.) are not'
ma gadantiiʃ	'you (f.s.) are not'	ma gadiHnaaʃ	'we are not'

3. Noun-Adjective Agreement

a. If a noun is singular, the adjective agrees with it in gender, number, and definiteness:

'al-maSarr al-Haali	'the beautiful scarf'
'az-zanna al-Haaliya	'the beautiful dress'
bint Haaliya	'a beautiful girl'
rajjaal Haali	'a good, handsome man'

b. If the noun is plural, a plural adjective is used with human nouns and a plural or singular feminine adjective is used with non-human nouns. A plural adjective is preferred with a plural non-human noun:

'ar-rijaal al-Haliyiin	'the good, handsome men'	
nisaa' Haaliyaat	'beautiful women'	
jibaal 9aaliyaat	'high mountains'	or:
jibaal 9aaliya	'high mountains'	
duur kibaar	'big houses'	or:
duur kabiira	'big houses'	
'iθnayn duur kibaar	'two big houses'	or:
'iθnayn duur kabiira	'two big houses'	

4. Active Participles: VI-X

Sound: mut(a)faa9il

tafaagad	'to check'	mut(a)faagid	'having checked'
ta9aawan	'to cooperate'	mut(a)9aawin	'cooperative; having cooperated'
taʃaawar	'to consult with each other'	mut(a)ʃaawir	'having consulted'
tafaaham	'to reach an understanding'	mut(a)faahim	'having reached an understanding; understanding'
tagaabal	'to meet with each other'	mut(a)gaabil	'having met with each other'
talaabaj	'to quarrel with each other'	mut(a)laabij	'having quarreled with each other'
taḍaahar	'to pretend'	mut(a)ḍaahir	'pretending; a demonstrator'

Defective: mut(a)faa9i

taHaaka	'to speak with each other'	mut(a)Haaki	'having spoken with each other'

Class VII

Class VII verbs in YA are very rare. The active participle pattern is munfa9il:

nsaHab	'to withdraw (forces)'	munsaHib	'withdrawing; having withdrawn'

Class VIII

Sound: mufta9il, mifta9il

ntaxab	'to elect; to select'	muntaxib	'having elected; elector'
Htafal	'to celebrate'	miHtafil	'having celebrated'
ltabaj	'to hit oneself'	miltabij	'having hit oneself'
xtalaf	'to be different'	muxtalif	'being different'
jtama9	'to have a meeting'	mujtami9	'meeting; having been in a meeting'
ttafag	'to come to an agreement'	muttafig	'being in agreement'
Htarag	'to be burned'	miHtarig	'having been burned'

Defective: mifta9i or mift9i

ʃtka	'to complain'	miʃtki	'having complained'
ntaha	'to come to an end'	mintahi	'having come to an end'
ʃta	'to want'	miʃti	'having wanted; desirous'
ʃtara	'to buy'	miʃtari	'having bought; buyer'

Hollow: muftaa9 or miftaa9

rtaaH	'to be comfortable'	murtaaH	'comfortable; at ease'
Htaaj	'to be in need of'	miHtaaj	'in need of'

Doubled: mufta99

htamm	'to take an interest in s.th.'	muhtamm	'concerned with'
mtadd	'to stretch, extend'	mumtadd	'stretching, extending'
Htall	'to occupy'	muHtall	'having occupied'

Class X

Sound: mustaf9il, mistaf9il

sta'jar	'to rent'	musta'jir	'having rented; tenant'
sta9jal	'to hurry up'	mista9jil	'in a hurry'
sta9mal	'to use'	musta9mil	'having used'
starja9	'to regain'	mistarji9	'having regained'

Defective: mistaf9i

staGna	'to do without'	mistaGni	'having done without'

Hollow: mustafiil

stajaab	'to respond'	mustajiib	'responsive'
stafaad	'to benefit'	mustafiid	'having benefited'
stagaal	'to resign'	mustagiil	'having resigned'

Doubled: mustafill

sta9add	'to be prepared'	musta9idd	'prepared, ready'
staHagg	'to deserve'	mustaHigg	'deserving, worthy of'

5. Active Participles: Quadriliterals

Sound: mufa9lil

tarjam	'to translate'	mutarjim	'having translated; translator'
gambar	'to sit down'	mugambir	'seated'
Salfa9	'to slap'	muSalfi9	'having slapped'

Reduplicated: mufa9lil

gaSgaS	'to cut up'	mugaSgiS	'having cut up'
laflaf	'to wrap up s.th.'	mulaflif	'having wrapped up s.th.'
kamkam	'to sew up a sleeve'	mukamkim	'having sewed up a sleeve'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Recognition

Find the active participle in each of the sentences below and give the verb it is derived from.

1. 'ana mutaGaddi dagga.
2. 'iHna mutafaahimiin.
3. 'al-wagt mutabaddil.
4. hin muta9allimaat 'ingiliizi.
5. 'antu mutasallifiin fuluus?
6. huw muta9aawin ma9aana.
7. 9ammak mutafaahim l-l-mawḍuu9.
8. 'an-naas miHtafiliin b-l-9iid.
9. man mutarjim ar-risaala?
10. hin mugambiraat fi l-mafraj.

Drill 2 Composition

Derive an active participle from each of the verbs given below and use each in a meaningful sentence. The English meaning of the active participle is given in parentheses.

taHammam	(having bathed)	rtaaH	(comfortable)
tafaagad	(having checked)	sta9jal	(in a hurry)
taGayyar	(changeable)	stagaal	(having resigned)
xtalaf	(different)	gambar	(seated)
ntaha	(having ended)	sta9add	(ready, prepared)

Drill 3 Transformation: relative clause → active participle

Example: 'absart az-zawj allaði tafaaham ma9 9amma. →
'absart az-zawj al-mutafaahim ma9 9amma.

'I saw the husband who came to an agreement with his father-in-law. → (same translation).'

1. 'a9rif an-naas allaði talaabaju fi s-suug 'ams.
2. 'absart aT-Taalibaat allaði tagaabalayn ma9 ar-ra'iis?
3. haaði l-guwwaat allaði nsaHabat min al-yaman al-januubi.
4. 'an-naas allaði ntaxabu r-ra'iis gad saaru.
5. haaða huw waziir al-maaliyya laaði jtama9 ma9 mudiiriin al-bunuuk.
6. 'al-bayt allaði Htarag bayt jaarana fi baab al-yaman.
7. 'allaði ma yittafig ma9 9amma yilga maʃaakil.
8. 'as-sana llaði ntahat kaanat sanat xayr.
9. haaða huw allaði yitarjim fi wazaarat al-xaarijiyya.
10. 'allaði sta9malat as-sayyaara hiy bint 9ammi.

Drill 4 Transformation

w-9aadak b-tguul lilma?
'And do you (m.s.) still say, "Why"?'

T: 'anti 'you (f.s.)'
S: w-9aadiʃ b-tguuli lilma?

1.	huw	5.	'antu	9.	'antayn
2.	hiy	6.	'anti	10.	'antu

3. hin	7. 'iHna	11. hum
4. hum	8. 'ant	12. hin

Drill 5 Conjugation: ma gad--ʃ

T: huw 'he'
S: ma gaduwʃ 'he isn't'

1. 'ana	4. hum	7. hin
2. hiy	5. 'ant	8. 'anti
3. 'iHna	6. 'antu	9. we

Drill 6 Substitution

'ana gaani9 min haaði l-Hayaa.
'I am fed up with this life.'

1. studies	5. place	9. long meeting
2. work	6. life	10. position
3. condition	7. city	11. buying and selling
4. food	8. restaurant	12. circumstances

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw mutafaahim l-l-mawḍuu9. 'He is aware of the subject.'

1. I	5. he	9. they (f.)
2. problem	6. perfect	10. question
3. they (m.)	7. I	11. you (m.p.)
4. we	8. you (m.s.)	12. she

Drill 8 Transformation: perfect → kaan + act. part.

Example: T: takallamt ma9aahum. 'I talked to them.'
S: kunt mutakallim ma9aahum. 'I had (already) talked to them.'

1. taHammamna.
2. 'al-wagt tabaddal.
3. taGaddayna Huut.
4. Htafalu b-l-9iid.
5. sta9addat l-l-'imtiHaan.
6. jtama9ayn fi l-mafraj.
7. Htaaju sayyaara.
8. Htarag al-bayt.
9. laflafu ladaatahum.
10. taGassalna fi l-Hammaam.

Drill 9 Translation

1. Hey, what are you so grumpy about? Are you ill?
2. I am not ill; I am fed up with this kind of life.
3. I have been asking for an increase in my salary for two months. The director is not very cooperative.
4. The time is changeable. It's different from last year.
5. We are very comfortable here in Yemen, but we are in need of a car.
6. The buyer and the seller have come to an agreement.
7. My monthly salary does not go far and prices are very high in Sanaa. I am in debt.
8. I am not the only one who asks her husband for a dress. It's true, as you say, each one has one's own means.
9. Don't worry! We will go, chew qat, and we will reach an understanding. Your father-in-law is very understanding.
10. These excuses, rest assured, will not go unnoticed by me.

Drill 10 Listening Comprehension

Listen to the following passage on tape and answer the questions below. You need to know the following new words:

da9a	(yid9i) to call, send for s.o.
'agna9	IV to convince
Talaag	v.n. divorce
firaaʃ	bed; bedding
Hanag	(yaHnug) to get mad or angry
gaddar	II to appreciate, esteem highly
mawgif	(mawaagif) stand; situation
xaLaaS	it's over, it's finished
taSarraf	V to act freely; to dispose freely
bugʃa	(bugaʃ) small unit of money = 1/40 of a riyal
HaTab	coll. wood
Habb	coll. general term for grain, such as wheat, corn, etc.
naar	(niiraan) fire; gunfire. naar! naar! very expensive
Hall	(yHill) to solve, e.g. a problem

(9ala gadr firaaʃak midd rijlak prov., equivalent to: as you make your bed, you must lie in it.)

Questions

1. lilma saar az-zawj 'ila bayt 9amma?
2. man huw allaði 'agna9 az-zawja?
3. waafag az-zawj 'inna tagiyya tirja9 'ila baytah?
4. maa huw ʃarT az-zawj?
5. ma 'adda z-zawj 'ila zawjata?
6. lilma gaalat tagiyya "naar naar!"?

U N I T 5 8

I. TEXT

'al-Haaqir yi9lim al-Gaayib

'al-walad: Hayyaak aLLa ya 9amm Taaha!

9amm Taaha: laa Hayyaak wala gawwaak aLLa ya Gurraabi ʃ-ʃuum! haakaða taf9al bi fi9latak w-tsiir!

'al-walad: maa huw ya bih? maa gad HaSal minni?

9amm Taaha: nisiit maa gad fa9alta l-yawm al-'awwal Hiin laagaytani w-ana xaðTi fi s-suug w-gult-a-li 'inna si9r as-sukkar rtafa9 w-xallaytani 'aHmil b-saa9ati 'ila l-Haanuut 9ala mayd 'abii9 baagi s-sukkar allaði ma9i fi l-mixzaan w-ba9da HaSal-li ma HaSal: kulla min taHt ra'sak ya kabiir ar-ra's!

'al-walad: ya kabiir al-karʃ kaθiir aT-Tama9! gul-li ya 9amm Taaha wala yhimak 'ana ʃa-tHammalak li-annak miθl 'abi laakin al-gaanuun w-n-niqaam ma yaHmiiʃ al-'aGbiyaa' miθl 'amθaalak w-'ant gu9t Gabi li-'annak Saddagtani. 'ana gult 'inna ba9ð an-naas hum allaði 'aʃaa9u 'inna si9r as-sukkar rtafa9 w-'ant ta9rif man hum ba9ð an-naas; 'ant w-'amθaalak min al-jaʃi9iin w-l-muGaaliyiin hum allaði bi-yif9alu haaði l-'iʃaa9a 9ala sibb yirfa9u 'as9aar as-sila9. nisyu 'inna bih gaanuun yaHmi l-muwaaTin l-miskiin min al-mubalbiliin haðawlaa'. nisiit 'agul-lak 'inni fi nafs al-yawm sirt al-jam9iyya l-'istihlaakiyya w-ʃtarayt kiis as-sukkar b-nafs as-si9r al-muHaddad.

9amm Taaha: hayya smθ! 'isma9! hayya ngali9 min gubaali. gala9u 9aynak! maabiʃ minnak 'illa l-xasaara!

'al-walad: 'ana naSHtak ya 9amm Taaha. nisiit tit9aalaj min al-maraðallaði fiik.

9amm Taaha: 'ayy marð? muriðat 9aynak! 'ana saa9 al-jamal w-SiHHati 'aHsan mn SiHHatak ya 9uudi. hayya maa gult?

'al-walad: maraḍak huw maraḍ al-jaʃa9. 'ant ma gana9t b-r-ribH al-ma9guul allaði ma yḍurrʃ b-l-muwaaTin al-miskiin wala yxaalif gawaaniin ad-dawla w-'anḍimatha.

II. TRANSLATION

Those Attending Will Inform Those Who Are Absent

Boy: May God preserve your life, Uncle Taha!

Taha: May God not preserve your life! You are a bird (crow) of evil omen! Why have you done this to me and left me?

Boy: What is it? What have I done?

Taha: You forgot what you did to me yesterday when you met me while I was walking in the marketplace. You told me that the price of sugar had gone up, and made me go right away to my store in order to sell the rest of the sugar I had in the storeroom. You were the cause of all that happened to me, you fathead!

Boy: You are a very greedy man. Call me anything you want, Uncle Taha! I will be patient with you because you are like my father, but the law does not protect stupid people like you. You are stupid because you believed me. I said that some people had spread the rumor that the price of sugar had gone up. You know who those people are; they are greedy, just like you. They have forgotten that there is law that protects poor people from those who cause confusion and disorder. I forgot to tell you that on the same day I went to the consumer association and bought a sack of sugar at the same fixed price.

Taha: Hey, listen! Listen! Get out of my sight! The hell with you! There is nothing you cause, except loss.

Boy: I have advised you Uncle Taha. You have forgotten to get medical treatment for the illness you have.

Taha: What illness? You are ill. (Lit. "May your eyes become ill!") I am as strong as a camel and my health is better than your health, you skinny little thing! What do you think?

Boy: Your illness is that of greed. You have not been satisfied with reasonable profit that does not harm poor people and does not violate the law of the land and its systems.

III. VOCABULARY

la	(with foll. perfect) expresses a negative desire or wish. la gawwaak aLLaah! May God not keep you strong and in good health!
Gurraab	coll. ravens. unit Gurraabi
ʃuum	v.n. evil omen; misfortune
fa9al	(yaf9al) to do; to act. fa9al b- to do s.th. to s.o.
fi91a	(-aat) instance noun, act, deed, action
ya bih!	short for ya'abi! My father!
xaaTi	(-yiin) act. part. walking
rtafa9	VIII to go up; to increase
b-saa9a	(with suff. pron.) right away, immediately. sirt b-saa9ati. I went right away.
min taHt ra'sak	because of you
kabiir ar-ra's	big-headed; fathead
karʃ	('akriʃa) tripe; belly
Tama9	v.n. greed
taHammal	V to put up with; to endure
Hama	(yiHmi) to protect
miʕl	('amʕaal) usually with foll. suff. pron., s.o. similar to. 'amʕaalak the likes of you
gaa9	(yguu9) to become, turn out to be
'aʃaa9	IV to spread rumors
jaʃi9	(-iin) greedy; covetous
muGaali	(-yiin) act. part. selling s.th. at a high or excessive price
'iʃaa9a	(-aat) rumor

sil9a	(sila9) commodity
miskiin	(masaakiin) poor, miserable; humble
mubalbil	(-iin) act. part. causing confusion or disorder
jam9iyya	(-aat) association; corporation
'istihlaaki	adj. consumer (goods, prices, etc.). jam9iyya 'istihlaakiyya cooperative that deals with pricing and the consumption of goods
muHaddad	p.p. fixed. si9r muHaddad fixed price
ngala9	VII to go away. 'ingali9 imperat. Beat it!
gubaal	prep. in front of; face to face
xasaara	v.n. loss, damage
naSaH	(yanSaH) to advise, counsel s.o.
ta9aalaj	VI to be under or receive medical treatment
maraḍ	('amraaḍ) illness; disease
saa9	prep. like, similar to. syn. miθl
9uud	coll. sticks; stems, stalks. unit 9uudi
hayya maa gult?	What do you think? What can you say?
jaʃa9	v.n. greed
gana9 b-	(yigna9) to be satisfied with
ribH	('arbaaH) profit; interest
xaalaf	III to violate; to contradict

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

Tama9i	(-yyiin) greedy; covetous
balbal	(ybalbil) to cause confusion or anxiety
maftuuH	(-iin) p.p. open; having been opened
mamnuu9	(-iin) p.p. forbidden
mabni	(-yyiin) p.p. built
waḍḍaf	II to employ
'assas	II to establish
'ab9ad	IV to deport

V. GRAMMAR

1. Instance Nouns

Instance nouns, also known as nouns of single occurrence, are derived from verbal nouns or other kinds of nouns by suffixing -a, sometimes with appropriate stem changes. They are usually of the patterns fa9la, fi9la, and fu9la. Instance nouns express the meaning of a single occurrence (or a particular instance) of the underlying word, or a period or "spell" of such a state. Examples of instance nouns derived from verbal nouns:

Verb		Verbal Noun	Instance Noun	
fa9al	'to do'	fi9l	fi9la	'act, deed'
'akal	'to eat'	'akl	'akla	'meal'
dafa9	'to pay'	daf9	daf9a	'payment'
fataH	'to open'	fatH	fatHa	'an opening'
ragad	'to sleep'	ruguud	ragda	'a nap'
riji9	'to return'	rujuu9	raj9a	'a return'
xuTi	'to walk'	xaTw	xaTwa	'a step'
laff	'to turn'	laff	laffa	'a turning'
GuluT	'to err'	GalaT	GalTa	'a mistake'

2. Passive Participles

Passive participles are derived only from transitive verbs. All Class I sound verbs form their passive participles according to the pattern maf9uul. Defective verbs have the pattern maf9i. Examples:

Verb		Passive Participle	
katab	'to write'	maktuub	'having been written'
wajad	'to find'	mawjuud	'having been found; present'
fataH	'to open'	maftuuH	'open; having been opened'
9irif	'to know'	ma9ruuf	'known'

mana9	'to forbid'	mamnuu9	'forbidden'
Saraf	'to spend money'	maSruuf	'money spent'
Hamal	'to carry'	maHmuul	'carried'
gala	'to fry'	magli	'fried'
Gala	'to boil'	maGli	'boiled'
ʃawa	'to roast'	maʃwi	'roasted, grilled'
bana	'to build'	mabni	'built'

From augmented verbs, i.e., Classes II-X, the passive participle is formed by the prefixation of m(u)- before the first radical of the stem, with a as a stem vowel (vowel preceding the last radical). From quadriliterals, the pattern is m(u)fa9lal. Examples:

waḍḍaf	'to employ'	muwaḍḍaf	'employed; employee'
Gallag	'to close'	mGallag	'closed'
'assas	'to establish'	mu'assas	'established; built'
baarak	'to bless'	mubaarak	'blessed'
9aafa	'to cure'	mu9aafa	'cured'
'arsal	'to send'	mursal	'having been sent'
'ab9ad	'to deport'	mub9ad	'deported'
taragga	'to be promoted'	mutaraggi	'promoted'
tafaagad	'to check'	mutafaagad	'checked'
ntaxab	'to elect'	muntaxab	'elected'
sta'jar	'to rent'	musta'jar	'rented'
sta9mal	'to use'	musta9mal	'used'
tarjam	'to translate'	mutarjam	'translated'
Salfa9	'to slap'	muSalfa9	'slapped'
laflaf	'to wrap'	mulaflaf	'wrapped'

Passive participles derived from transitive verbs that take prepositional objects always have pronouns suffixed to the prepositions. The suffixed pronouns have as their antecedents the

noun-head of the construction. The participle does not show agreement with the subject; it remains in the base form (i.e., m.s.):

muwaafag 9alayha	'approved (f.s.)'
muwaafag 9alayhum	'approved (m.p.)'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Repetition

Learn the following expressions with instance nouns:

1.	'akal 'akla Ti9iima.	'He had a delicious meal.'
2.	dafa9 xams daf9aat.	'He made five payments.'
3.	fataHa fatHa gawiyya.	'He opened it vigorously.'
4.	ragad ragda Tawiila.	'He had a long sleep.'
5.	riji9 raj9at al-musta9jil.	'He returned hurriedly.'
6.	xuTi xaTwatayn.	'He walked two steps.'
7.	laff sittat laffaat.	'He turned six times.'
8.	jaa' jayyat al-kalb.	'He came like a dog.'
9.	GuluT GalTa kabiira.	'He made a big mistake.'
10.	ʂarab ʂarbatayn.	'He hit twice.'
11.	fa9al fi9la gabiiHa.	'He acted shamefully.'

Drill 2 Recognition

Find the passive participle in each of the sentences below and give the verb it is derived from.

1.	'ad-dars maktuub.	6.	9iidak mubaarak!
2.	'al-'awlaad mawjuudiin haana.	7.	jaa' ar-ra'iis al-muntaxab.
3.	'al-Haanuut maftuuH.	8.	'al-kutub mutarjama.
4.	'akalt Huut magli.	9.	'az-ziyaada muwaafag 9alayha.
5.	hin muwaʂʂafaat fi l-bank.	10.	ʃtarayt sayyaara musta9mala.

Drill 3 Composition

Derive a passive participle from each of the verbs given below and use each in a meaningful sentence. The English meaning of the passive participle is given in parentheses.

laflaf	(wrapped)	Saraf	(money spent)
sta'jar	(rented)	wajad	(found; located)
Gallag	(closed)	'assas	(established)
taragga	(promoted)	'ab9ad	(deported)
bana	(built)	Salfa9	(slapped)

Drill 4 Transformation: relative clause → passive participle

Example: 'a9rif al-Haanuut allaði fataHuu. →
'a9rif al-Haanuut al-maftuuH.

1. 'as-sila9 allaði mana9uuha min al-'aswaag ruusiyya.
2. sirt 'ila l-makaan allaði na9rifa.
3. naskun fi bayt banaynaa gabl xams siniin.
4. 'al-jam9iyya llaði 'assasatha l-Hukuuma jam9iyya 'istihlaakiyya.
5. 'ar-risaala llaði 'arsaltaha wuSulat.
6. haaði madrasa banuuha as-sana l-'awwala.
7. HaSSalt ziyaada waafag 9alayha l-waziir.
8. 'ayn al-kitaab allaði tarjamta 'ila l-'ingiliizi?

Drill 5 Transformation: verb → passive participle

Replace the verb in parentheses by the corresponding passive participle.

Example: 'ad-duxuul 'ila s-siinama (mana9) ðalHiin. →
'ad-duul 'ila s-siinama mamnuu9 ðalHiin.

1. gara't al-kitaab al-(tarjam) 'ila l-9arabi?
2. ʃtarayt kiis as-sukkar b-nafs as-si9r al-(Haddad).
3. 'al-faakiha al-(wajad) fi l-'aswaag kulluha yamaniyya.
4. 'al-waziir kaan (wajad) haana gabl saa9atayn.
5. 'al-Huut al-(gala) fi l-maT9am Ti9iim.
6. 'an-naas al-(sta'jar) baytana saafaru fi S-Sayf.
7. hum kaanu (waʂʂaf) fi wazaarat al-xaarijiyya.

Drill 6 Completion

gult-a-li 'inna si9r as-sukkar gad rtafa9.
'You told me that the price of sugar had gone up.'

1. you would put up with me because I am like your father
2. the law protects poor people from the greed of merchants
3. those attending would inform those who are absent
4. he was employed by the consumer cooperative in Sanaa
5. there were greedy people who were not satisfied with reasonable profit
6. it was difficult to buy anything at the fixed price
7. this unreasonable profit did harm to poor people and violated the law of the land
8. drinking beer was forbidden in Saudi Arabia
9. the president-elect went to Ibb for a visit
10. there were many books translated into Arabic

Drill 7 Repetition

Learn the following phrases and sentences:

1.	xaalaf gaanuun al-muruur.	'He violated traffic regulations.'
2.	maa gad HaSal minni?	'What have I done?'
3.	kulla min taHt ra'sak.	'You were the cause of all of this.'
4.	'ant kaθiir aT-Tama9.	'You are very greedy.'

5.	hayya ngali9 min gubaali!	'Get out of my sight!'
6.	t9aalaj fi l-mustaʃfa.	'He received medical treatment in the hospital.'
7.	hayya maa gult?	'What do you think?'
8.	'ab9adata l-Hukuuma.	'The government deported him.'

U N I T 5 9

I. TEXT

'amθaal w-'agwaal

1. ma yHiin 9ala l-9uud 'illa giʃra.
2. ra's kabʃi wala Giraarat jaraad.
3. jaraada fi Surri wala barbari fi S-Suraab.
4. Haaki r-raTl yifham wagiyya.
5. man xabba' min 9aʃaa 'aSbaH yira.
6. laa 9araf al-gabiili baab baytak galabt al-madagga.
7. tazkiyat an-nafs gabiiHa.
8. nuSf aT-Tariig ma9gim al-baab.
9. 'al-juu9 yiddi l-gawzaba w-ʃ-ʃiba9 yiddi l-gamba9a.
10. laa taGawfal ad-dimm tagamba9 al-fa'r.
11. 'ahli wa-'in kasaru ḍahri.
12. 'al-'awwala lak w-θ-θaaniya 9alayk w-θ-θaaliθa la raddak aLLaah.
13. baa9 al-bayya9 w-stawfa θ-θaman.
14. baddal Hareewata b-9uḍmi.
15. bard xabba wala gummal xidaar.
16. barguug ya 'ahl as-suug.
17. bugʃatak w-s-suug.
18. buulu ya 9iyaali gad ana raayiHa s-saayila.
19. bi-yuxlug min al-Habba gubba.
20. jirba mugaama wala waadi Salb.
21. taHt as-sawaahi dawaahi.
22. man lagaSa l-Hanaʃ ftaja9 min as-salaba.
23. man fi yadda al-fa's ligi l-HaTab.
24. 'al-Gaayib Hijjata ma9aa.
25. b-gadr aS-Su9uud yakuun al-hubuuT.
26. law tiglii-la fi yaddak.
27. ʃakaru d-dimm xiri fi T-TaHiin.
28. 'ar-rabH fi 9ayn 'umma Gazaal.
29. bi-yit9allam al-Hilaaga fi ru-uus al-guḍ9aan.
30. laa mee' yiruub wala gaHba tituub.

II. TRANSLATION

Proverbs and Sayings

1. (There is nothing that sympathisizes with a stick, except its bark.)
   Your relatives will give you support. Nobody can do one's work as well as oneself.
2. (The head of my ram and not a bag of grasshoppers.)
   One today is better than two tomorrow.
   A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
3. (A grasshopper in my bag and not a billy goat in the fields.)
   Similar in meaning and usage to No. 2.
4. This proverb describes a person who is not worth his salt, because he is stubborn.
5. (He who hides something from his dinner will see it in the morning.) Be economical! Save for a rainy day!
6. (If a gabiili knows the door of your house turn your door knocker upside down.)
   Give him an inch and he will take a mile. This proverb is very similar in meaning and usage to 'adxalta min al-baab fa 'axrajak min aT-Taaga (See UNIT 49 No. 11).
7. (Self-praise is disdainful.)
   Equivalent to: Self-exaltation is the fool's paradise.
8. (Half the road is the threshold.)
   This proverb is similar to bidaayat al-miill xaTwa.
   'The beginning of a mile is one step,' i.e., the first step is always the hardest.
9. (Hunger leads to being seated in a submissive manner and satiation leads to jumping out of joy.)
10. (If the cat is inattentive, the mouse will jump out of joy.)
    Equivalent to: When the cat's away, the mice will play.
11. (They are my folks, even if they break my back.)
    This proverb urges people to stick to their tribes and clans.
    Blood is thicker than water.

12. (The first time is for you; the second time is against you; the third time, may God not protect you from harm.)
If you make a mistake once, you are forgiven. If you make the same mistake twice, it is against you. If you make the same mistake for the third time, go to hell.
13. (The seller has already sold the commodity and has been paid in full.)
It's too late! This proverb is equivalent to ba9dima ʃayyab xatanuu. 'After he became an old man they circumcised him.'
14. (He exchanged his bride for a bone.)
This proverb describes a person who exchanges a valuable thing for a worthless thing.
15. (The cold of Khabba and not the fleas of Khidar.)
xabba is a place known for its cold weather and xidaar is a place known for its many fleas. If you are in a position where you have to make a choice of two evils, choose the lesser of them.
You're between a rock and a hard place.
16. (It's apricots, shoppers!)
It's crystal clear; it does not need any proof. It's clearer than day.
17. (Your money and the market.)
This proverb is said by a seller to a buyer who thinks the seller will charge him too much. The seller is telling him, "It's your money; go haggle! Depend upon your skill."
18. (Urinate, my children! I am going to the stream.)
The mother is going to the stream to wash her dirty clothes. She asks her children to urinate (in their clothes) so that she might wash her clothes and their clothes. She wants to kill two birds with one stone.
19. (He creates a dome from a grain.)
Equivalent to: He makes a mountain out of a molehill.
20. (A cultivated piece of land and not a barren valley.)
Prefer a small arable piece of land to a whole barren valley.
Equivalent to: Quality is better than quantity.

21. (In quiet, inattentive people you will find smart, intelligent people.)
    Do not judge people by their appearance! Equivalent to: Still water runs deep. You can't judge a book by its cover.
22. (He who has been bitten by a snake fears a rope.)
    Once bitten twice shy.
23. (He who has an ax in his hand will find wood.)
    Equivalent to: Where there is a will there is a way.
24. (The absent person has his own excuse.)
    Equivalent to: The absent party is not at fault.
25. (Descent is equivalent to ascent.)
    Equivalent to: What goes up must come down.
26. (Even if you fry something for him in your hand.)
    This proverb describes a person who is too difficult to please. He is very stubborn.
27. (They thanked the cat and he defacated in the flour.)
    Equivalent to: Do not bite the hand that feeds you!
28. (A monkey, in the eyes of its mother, is a gazelle.)
    Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.
29. (He learns a barber's trade by shaving the heads of the bald.)
    This proverb is used to describe a person who uses his skill to take advantage of the poor and the weak.
30. (Water does not curdle, nor does a prostitute repent.)
    Equivalent to: You cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear. A leopard cannot change his spots.

III. VOCABULARY

Hann (9ala)	(yHinn) to feel affection (for) s.o.; to sympathize (with) s.o.
giʃr	coll. bark. unit giʃra
Giraara	(-aat) bag, sack
jaraad	coll. locusts; grasshoppers. unit jaraada
barbar	coll. billy goats. unit barbari

Suraab	harvest time
raTl	('arTaal) unit of weight = one kilogram
wagiyya	(-aat) unit of weight = 1/4 kilogram
xabba'	II to hide, conceal; to save
ra'a	(yira) to see. syn. 'absar
laa	conj. if. syn. 'iδa, 'in
gabiili	(gabaa'il) peasant; uncouth, ill-mannered person
galab	(yaglib) to turn s.th. upside down
madagga	(-aat) door knocker
tazkiya	v.n. praise; exaltation
gabiiH	(-iin) ugly. opp. Haali. elat. 'agbaH
ma9gim	(ma9aagim) threshold
juu9	v.n. hunger
ʃiba9	v.n. state of being satiated with food. opp. juu9
gamba9a	v.n. jump for joy; walking arrogantly
taGawfal	(yataGawfal) to be taken unawares
tagamba9	(yatagamb9) = gamba9 jump for joy; to walk arrogantly
wa-'in	conj. even if
radd	(yarudd) to send back; to bring back. laa raddak aLLaah! Go to hell!
stawfa	X to receive s.th. in full. stawfa θ-θaman. He was paid in full.
baddal	II to change; to exchange
9aδm	coll. bones. unit 9uδmi
gummal	coll. fleas. unit gummali
baal	(yibuul) to urinate
saayila	current of a stream
xalag	(yuxlug) to create; to make
gubba	(gubab) dome
jirba	(jirab) piece of land, lot
mugaam	p.p. ploughed, tilled
Salb	uncultivated; rocky
saahi	(sawaahi) inattentive; absent-minded
daahiya	(dawaahi) smart, intelligent person

lagaS	(yalguS) to bite
Hanaʃ	(Hiʃaan) snake
ftaja9	VIII to be afraid of
salab	coll. rope. unit salaba
fa's	(fiisaan) ax, hatchet
Su9uud	v.n. ascending, ascent. opp. hubuuT
hubuuT	v.n. descent. opp. Su9uud
ʃakar	(yaʃkur) to thank
xiri	(yixra) to defacate
rabH	(rubaaH) monkey; ape
Gazaal	(Gizlaan) gazelle; deer
Hilaaga	v.n. act of cutting hair
'agʕa9	(guʕ9aan) bald-headed
raab	(yiruub) to be curdled (milk)
gaHba	(GiHaab) whore, prostitute
taab	(yituub) to repent, do penance

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

9aanad	III to be stubborn
mu9aanid	(-iin) act. part. stubborn; obstinate
Sarab	(yaSrub) to harvest

V. GRAMMAR

1. False Constructs

The construction Adj + N is not very common in SA. Noun phrases of such a construction are descriptive clichés or stereotyped expressions. The whole construction functions as an adjective: the second term, which is always a definite noun, restricts or specifies the item of reference of the adjective, the first term. Such phrases are known as false 'iʕaafa constructions in literary Arabic. We had two examples of such constructions in UNIT 58:

kabiir ar-ra's 'big-headed'
kabiir al-karʃ 'pot-bellied'

Other examples:

Tawiil al-lisaan 'long-tongued; sharp-tongued'
waasi9 aS-Sadr 'open-minded'
ʕayyig aS-Sadr 'easily annoyed'
gaSiir al-gaama 'short of stature'
Tayyib al-galb 'good-natured'
ʕa9iif al-galb 'fainthearted'
galiil al-Hayaa' 'shameless, impudent'
SaGiir an-nafs 'mean-spirited'
murtaaH aʕ-ʕamiir 'peaceful of mind'

The second term is almost always a part of the body or a verbal noun associated with the body.

2. Possession

Possession in SA is signalled by:

a. a noun construct: bayt 9ali 'Ali's house'
b. a suffixed pronoun: bayti 'my house'
c. Hagg: 'al-bayt Hagg 9ali 'Ali's house'
'al-bayt Haggi 'my house'
'al-bayt Haggohum 'their (m.) house'

Hagg can also precede the noun:

Hagg 9ali l-bayt 'Ali's house'
Haggi l-bayt 'my house'
Haggana l-bilaad 'our country'

Hagg with a suffixed pronoun or a following noun can also function as a predicate:

'al-bayt Haggi.	'The house is mine.'
haaδa l-bayt Hagg 9ali.	'This house is Ali's.'

3. Negation

a. An equational or a nominal sentence is made negative by the negative particle maaʃ:

'al-mudiir maaʃ haana.	'The director is not here.'
'ant maaʃ jaawi9?	'Aren't you (m.s.) hungry?'
huw maaʃ daari.	'He does not know.'
'az-zalaT maaʃ mi9i.	'The money is not with me.'

b. A verb is made negative by using the negative particle ma before the verb and suffixing -ʃ to the verb. The use of -ʃ is optional, although it is usually used:

ma STabaHʃ.	'He did not have breakfast.'
ma sirtʃ.	'I did not go.'
ma niʃtiiʃ.	'We do not want.'
ma tudrusʃ.	'She does not study.'

Verb-like expressions, e.g., 9ind 'to have' and bih 'there is; there are' are also negativized by maa ...ʃ:

ma 9indakʃ jahhaal?	'Don't you (m.s.) have children?'
ma 9indinaaʃ gaat.	'We don't have qat.'

The negative of bih 'there is; there are' is ma bihʃ → maabiʃ:

maabiʃ mee'.	'There is no water.'
maabiʃ 'as9aar muHaddada.	'There are no fixed prices.'

The past tense of bih is kaan bih 'there was; there were', the negative of which is ma kaanʃ bih:

ma kaanʃ bih mee'. 'There was no water.'
ma kaanʃ bih madaaris. 'There were no schools.'

c. An imperative is negativized by the negative particle laa + imperfect tense. A negative command (or request) is used to tell someone not to do something. Examples:

laa traajim an-naas! 'Do not throw rocks at people.'
laa titzawwaj ðalHiin! 'Don't get married now.'

d. The negative particle wala, literally, "and not", used before a noun or a phrase, expresses something that is not desired. laa ... wala is neither ... nor:

naar San9a wala jannat ðamaar.
(The hell of Sanaa and not the paradise of Dhamar.)
i.e., I prefer the hell of Sanaa to the paradise of Dhamar.

ra's kabʃi wala Giraarat jaraad.
(The head of my ram and not a bag of grasshoppers.)
i.e., one today is better than two tomorrow.
laa 9ali wala mHammad 'neither Ali no Muhammad'

laa mee' yiruub wala gaHba tituub.
(Water does not curcle, nor does a prostitute repent.)
i.e., you cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation

Example: T: r'asa kabiir. 'His head is big.'
S: kabiir ar-ra's. 'He is big-headed, a fathead.'

1. karʃa kabiir.
2. ṣamiira murtaaH.
3. lisaana Tawiil.
4. Sadra waasi9.
5. 'anfushum SaGiira.
6. galbaha Tayyib.
7. Galba ṣa9iif.
8. Hayaa'aha galiil.
9. nafsa SaGiira.
10. gaamatha Tawiila.

Drill 2 Question -- Answer

Give negative answers to the following questions:

1. 'antu jaawi9iin?
2. 'az-zalaT ma9aakum?
3. hum daariyiin b-l-miʃkila?
4. taGaddayti Huut?
5. 9a-tsiir as-suug?
6. STabaHti?
7. bih gahwa 'amriikiyya?
8. 9indak jahhaal?
9. bi-yudrus fi l-layl?
10. haaδa l-bayt Haggak?

Drill 3 Transformation: positive → negative

1. 'al-Hareewa mu'addaba w-kaθiirat al-Hayaa'.
2. baa9 al-bayyaa9 w-stawfa θ-θaman.
3. bi-yuxlug min al-Habba gubba.
4. 'al-Haaṣir 'a9lam al-Gaayib.
5. kaan bih fundug haana gabl sanatayn.
6. bih bayyaa9iin yigna9u b-r-ribH al-ma9guul.
7. haaδa r-ribH yṣurr b-l-muwaaTin al-miskiin w-yxaalif gawaaniin ad-dawla.

Drill 4 Transformation: N + suff. pron. →
'al-N + Hagg + suff. pron. →
Hagg + suff. pron. + 'al-N

Example: T: kitaabi 'my book'
S_1: 'al-kitaab Haagi 'my book'
S_2: Haggi l-kitaab 'my book'

1. kitaabuhum
2. dimmana
3. jirbati
4. zannatha
5. zalaTak
6. bustaani
7. 'awlaaduhum
8. bintaha
9. bilaadana
10. kitaabiʃ
11. madrasathin
12. 'ibnakum

Drill 5 Double Substitution

Example: T: his bride -- bone
S: baddal Hareewata b-9uôsmi
'He exchanged his bride for a bone.'

1. pants -- shirt
2. her dress -- shoes
3. my pen -- notebook
4. dollars -- riyals
5. my bride -- bone
6. his camel -- horse
7. radio -- tape recorder
8. shoes -- sandals
9. apricots -- apples
10. her bracelet -- two rings

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

9aanad w-baal fi T-Tariig.
'He was stubborn and urinated in the street.'

1. hum
2. hiy
3. 'ant
4. 'antu
5. 'iHna
6. 'ana
7. negative
8. huw
9. hum
10. 'iHna
11. 'antu
12. 'anti

Drill 7 Translation

1. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
2. I was walking in the marketplace when I met him.
3. Some people spread the rumors that the price of sugar had gone up.
4. When the cat's away, the mice will play.
5. I forgot to tell you that on the same day I went to the consumer association and bought a sack of sugar at the same fixed price.
6. Beauty is in the eye of the beholder.
7. I am in better health than you are. What do you think?
8. He makes a mountain out of a molehill.
9. Your illness is that of greed. You are not satisfied with reasonable profit. This violates the law of the land and its democratic system.
10. He who has been bitten by a snake fears a rope.

U N I T 6 0

REVIEW
(Units 56-59)

Drill 1 Fill in the space with an appropriate word or phrase:

1. 'al-xitaan huw _____; yiguulu fulaan taxattan ya9ni _____.
2. xaal aT-Tifl huw allaði _____ b-kull maSaariif al-xitaan.
3. fi z-zaman al-gadiim kaan al-xaatin huw _____ walaakin ðalHiin _____ yguum b-l-xitaan.
4. 'al-xitaan _____ 9aadatan yawm _____ w-yaxtinu T-Tifl lamman ykuun 9umra _____ siniin.
5. 'ant tasallaft fuluus min al-bank; ya9ni 'innak _____ 'ila l-bank.
6. xallaytani 'aHmil b-saa9ati 'ila l-Haanuut ya9ni _____ _____ _____ _____ .
7. fulaan ya'kul kaθiir; huw _____ al _____ .
8. 'al-gaanuun w-n-niʂaam _____ al_____ al_____ min al-jaʃi9iin wa l_____.
9. bugʃatak w-s-suug. haana maabiʃ 'as9aar _____.
10. saar al-mustaʃfa 9ala mayd _____ min al-maraʂ allaði bih.
11. huw bayyaa9 Tama9i; ma yigna9 b_____ al_____.
12. 'as-siwaaga mamnuu9a fi haaða ʃ-ʃaari9; 'ant _____ gaanuun _____.
13. ma _____ 9ala l-9uud 'illa giʃra.
14. 'al-juu9 yiddi l_____ w_____ yiddi l-gamba9a.
15. laa _____ ad-dimm _____ al-fa'r.
16. baa9 al-bayyaa9 w_____ θ-θaman.
17. bi-yuxlug min al-Habba _____.
18. man fi yadda l-fa's _____ _____.
19. b-gadr aS-Su9uud yakuun al_____.
20. _____ d-dimm _____ fi T-TaHiin.
21. bi-yit9allam al-Hilaaga fi _____ _____.
22. laa mee' _____ wala gaHba _____.

23. 'al-Haaʂir yi9lim al_____ walaakin al-Gaayib _____ ma9aa.
24. 9amal al-Hallaag huw al_____ w-9amal as-sawwaag huw as_____.
25. 'allaʂi maabiʃ ʃa9r fi ra'sa _____ w-allaʂi ma ybsir _____.

Drill 2 Synonyms

Give a synonym for each of the following words:

kunaafa	_____	xitaan	_____	mudarris	_____
murattab	_____	taxattan	_____	tabaddal	_____
fallat	_____	Haamil	_____	Gabi	_____
xaatin	_____	xuTi	_____	9aamil	_____

Drill 3 Antonyms

Give a word that has an opposite meaning of each of the following:

Gaayib	_____	malyaan	_____	Gallag	_____
'ajjar	_____	wassax	_____	'adxal	_____
sallaf	_____	tabaddal	_____	baa9	_____
mu'ajjir	_____	xasaara	_____	gabiiH	_____
juu9	_____	Su9uud	_____	waaTi	_____
Gabi	_____	malyaan	_____	xasaara	_____

Drill 4 Active and Passive Participles

Give the active and the passive participles of each of the following verbs and use each in a meaningful sentence:

ta'akkad	Gallag	'ajjar	Tallag
ntaxab	ttafag	sta9mal	sta9jal

tarjam	gaSgaS	laflaf	kamkam
katab	Hamal	sajjal	'arsal
baarak	'aɕaa9	ntaxab	Haddad
9irif	'asːas	sta9mal	balbal

Drill5 Verb Forms

Fill in the correct form of the verbal phrase:

Hama 'to defend'

1. It (m.) defends:
2. you (m.p.):

jannan 'to drive crazy'

1. She drove me crazy:
2. Don't drive (f.s.) me crazy!:

baal 'to urinate'

1. I urinated:
2. Don't urinate (m.p.)!:
3. He will urinate:
4. I can't urinate:

muriɕ 'to be ill'

1. She was ill:
2. He will be ill:
3. Wasn't he ill?:
4. I wasn't ill:

baa9 'to sell'

1. I sold:
2. They (m.) sold:
3. Sell (m.p.)!:
4. He will sell it:

nisi 'to forget'

1. Don't forget (m.s.)!:
2. I forgot:
3. They (f.) forgot:
4. They (m.) will forget:

xuTi 'to walk'

1. I was walking:
2. We walked:
3. Don't walk (m.s.)!:
4. She walked:

xiri 'to defacate'

1. She defacated:
2. I defacated:
3. Don't defacate (m.s.)!:
4. He will defacate:

Hinig 'to be angry'

1. She was angry:
2. Are you angry?:
3. Don't be angry (f.s.)!:
4. We will be angry:

Gaab 'to be absent'

1. I was absent:
2. They (f.) were absent:

Drill 6 Translation

1. To be circumcised means to be cleansed.
2. It is a customary procedure, not a religious procedure.
3. The one who performed circumcision in the olden times was the barber.
4. Among the Yemeni dishes are fenugreek, chopped up beef stew, roast lamb, and lamb stew.
5. I am sure he is the one who has sent the letter.
6. There are laws that protect tenants against the greed of landlords.
7. I am in debt and my salary doesn't go far.
8. I am fed up with this life. I am about to throw up.
9. He is aware of the problem. Let's go see him!
10. Don't worry! He is convinced. He is not going to divorce her.
11. This is a rumor. Don't believe all that you hear!
12. He ate a delicious meal and had a long nap.
13. He violated traffic regulations; he was the cause of all of this.
14. It's important (to me) that we go see him. What do you think?

Drill 7 Listening Comprehension

Listen to the following passage on tape once. Read it and then listen to it again and answer the questions below.

Suura min al-waagi9

-- mamnuu9 ad-duxuul! 'ayn 9a-tsiir?
-- ma billa mi9i tayyih al-waraga 'aʃti 'adaxxilha-li haana 'ila l-maHkama. mi9i waaHid Gariim.
-- gulnaa-lak 'ad-duxuul mamnuu9. 'ingali9 min aT-Tariig!
-- huw ðˤa wakiil Gariimi daxal!
-- haaðˤa huw wakiil w-ma9aa taSriiH b-d-duxuul fi 'ayy wagt yiʃti.
-- kayf? huw wakiil ʃarii9a masmuuH-la b-d-duxuul. bi-yruuH yGaaliT w-ana l-muwaaTin al-miskiin al-maðˤluum 'abga haana xaarij al-baab. 'ayn al-9adaala?
-- siir wakkil-lak waaHid!
-- kayf 'awakkil waaHid? wakiil aʃ-ʃarii9a yiʃti minni fi l-yawm al-waaHid 9ala l-'agall miyat riyaal. min 'ayn-li haaðˤa? 'ana madyuun maabiʃ mi9i zalaT. gad bi9t ma fawgi w-ma taHti.

New Vocabulary

ma billa	only, and no more. ma billa mi9i I only have
daxxal	II to let in, bring in s.th. or s.o.
maHkama	(maHaakim) court, tribunal. maHkama ʃar9iyya Islamic court
Gariim	(-iin, Guramaa') litigant; debtor
wakiil	(wukalaa') agent; attorney
taSriiH b-	(taSariiH) permit; permission to
masmuuH	p.p. permitted, allowed. opp. mamnuu9. masmuuH li-(s.o.) b-(s.th.). masmuuH-la b-d-duxuul. He is allowed to enter.
maðˤluum	(-iin) oppressed, unjustly treated
ðˤalam	(yaðˤlum) to oppress, treat s.o. unjustly

9adaala	v.n. justice. syn. 9adl
wakkal	II to appoint as agent or representative
9ala l-'agall	at least
ma fawgi	everything I have or own
w-ma taHti	

Questions

1. 'ayn 9a-yudxul al-muwaaTin? maa ma9aa?
2. masmuuH-la b-d-duxuul? man ma9aa?
3. man daxal? kayf daxal?
4. tigdar tudxul 'ila l-maHkama fi 'ayy wagt tiʃti?
5. kayf yigdar al-muwaaTin yudxul?
6. yigdar haaʕa l-muwaaTin yudxul? lilma?
7. haaʕa l-muwaaTin Gani walla fagiir?

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

1. Consonants

Arabic	English	Example	Meaning
ء	'	'ayn	where?
ب	b	bagari	beef
ت	t	taa9ib	tired
ث	θ	θintayn	two (f.)
ج	j	jaawi9	hungry
ح	H	Hama	hot weather
خ	x	xalas	to undress
د	d	dajla	overcoat
ذ	ð	ðahab	gold
ر	r	rajjaal	man
ز	z	zalaT	money
س	s	saani	straight (adv.)
ش	ʃ	ʃaagi	workman
ص	S	SabuuH	breakfast
ط	T	Taaga	window
ظ	ẓ	ẓayf	guest
ع	9	9aaTiʃ	thirsty
غ	G	Gudwa	tomorrow
ف	f	fiisa9	quickly
ق	g	gundara	pair of shoes
ك	k	kaawiya	an iron
ل	l; L	layl; 'aLLa	night; God
م	m	maaʃi	no
ن	n	naahi	fine, good
ه	h	hiy	she
و	w	ware	behind; backwards
ي	y	yurt	yogurt

2. Vowels

ـَ	a	bayn	between; among
ـِ	i	Tali	lamb
ـُ	u; o	bunn; Hodayda	coffee; Hudaida
ا	aa	Hamraa'	red (f.)
و	uu	fuuTa	towel
ي	ii	gawaaniin	laws
ي	ee	mee'	water

U N I T 6 1

I. TEXT

ðamaari b-San9aaniyyayn

kaan bih waaHid ðamaari w-iθnayn min San9a w-gaamu tasaayaru, w-l-'iθnayn min San9a yiʃtu yziidu 9ala SaaHib ðamaar[1] b-Hiðguhum[2]. 'awwal-ma ykuun[3] ðabaHu lahum dajaaja w-Tabaxuuha Hatta HaSSaluuha[4]. fa gaalu 'ahl San9a: "man 9a-yiddi 'aaya min al-gur'aan jarr waSla." fa l-'awwal min 'ahl San9a gaal: "fakku ragaba" w-'akal ar-ragaba. w-θ-θaani gaal: "ma yiTiir aT-Tayr 'illa b-janaaHa" w-'akal al-janaaH. w-Saahib ðamaar gaal: "'iða laffat as-saagu b-s-saag yawma'idin rabbuka l-l-masaag[5]" w-'akal ad-dajaaja b-kullaha.

min ba9d fa9alu lahum ta9ziba w-jama9u T-Tali w-l-birr w-s-samn, w-T-Tali fa9aluu la-S-SubH. min ba9d gaalu: "man taraaya r-ra'y aT-Tayyib gaam ya'kul aT-Tali" w-l-wa9d baynuhum la-S-SubH. fa min ba9d, gaamu S-SubH. SaaHib San9a gaal la-'axuu: "maa taraayayt?" gaal: taraayayt 'inni 9arajt as-samaa'" w-'axuu gaal: "'inni taraayayt 'inni daxalt al-janna" w-SaaHib ðamaar gad gaam ya'kul. gaalu: "maa taraayayt ya SaaHib ðamaar?" gaal: "'inni taraayayt waaHid 9araj as-samaa' w-waaHid daxal al-janna fa gumt 'akalt aT-Tali gabl-an ya'tiini malak al-mawt[6]!"

w-laylat θaani yawm jalasu la-l-9aʃee' w-gad að-ðamaari raagid, w-gaamu yxazzigu l-kiis Hagga b-l-fatiila, w-ð-ðamaari gaam Tariig al-Himaar[7]. bakka9 maʃaafir al-Himaar, 'al-maʃfir al-'a9la w-l-maʃfir al-'asfal, w-jalasu la-S-SubH w-gaamu ygawwimu ð-ðamaari. gaalu: "ya ðamaari! gum! gum! gad an-nujuum xarrat fawg kiisak." gaal: "gad 'absart al-Himaar yiʂHak 9ala l-kiis Haggi!"

II. VOCABULARY

ðamaari (-yyiin) of or characteristic of Dhamar, city in the Y.A.R.

b- for, having the value of, equivalent to. ðamaari b-San9aaniyyayn. A person from Dhamar is worth two Sanaanis.

San9aani (-yyiin) of or characteristics of Sanaa, Sanaani
tasaayar VI to walk with each other; to be friends with each other
Hiðg v.n. cleverness; skillfulness
'awwal-ma just when, the very moment when
ðabaH (yiðbaH) to kill, slaughter
Hatta conj. until, till
'aaya (-aat) verse from the Quran
waSla (waSalaat) piece, cut of meat
fakk (yafukk) to set free
ragaba (rigaab) slave
janaaH ('ajniHa) wing of a bird
b-kull (with suff. pron.) entirely, in full
laff (yliff) = VIII ltaff to gather, assemble
saag (siigaan) thigh; leg
yawma'iðin literary; at that time
masaag course of events
min ba9d adv. later on, after that
ta9ziba (ta9aaziib) picnic, outing
jama9 (yajma9) to gather
birr coll. wheat; barley
taraaya VI to dream
ra'y dream; vision
wa9d ('aw9aad) promise; pledge
9araj (ya9ruj) to ascend to heaven
samaa' (samaawaat) heaven; sky. var. samee'
janna (-aat) paradise
gabl-an conj. before. syn. gablima
malak (malaa'ika) angel
mawt v.n. death
xazzag II to make holes in s.th.
fatiila (-aat) lantern
bakka9 II to split or tear apart
maʃfir (maʃaafir) lip. 'al-maʃfir al-'a9la the upper lip. 'al-maʃfir al-'asfal the lower lip

gawwam	II to wake up s.o.
xarr	(yxurr) to drop, fall down
ɣiHik (9ala)	(yiɣHak) to laugh (at) s.o.; to make fun of s.o.

III. NOTES

1 SaaHib ðamaar the one from Dhamar = 'að-ðamaari

2 They wanted to outwit the person from Dhamar.

3 The very first thing that happened or the very first thing they did was that they ...

4 Hatta HaSSaluuha until it became well cooked and ready to be eaten

5 The reference here is to the Day of Judgment when people throng, waiting to account for their deeds.

6 malak al-mawt is Azrael, the angel of death.

7 gaam Tariig al-Himaar. He went toward the donkey.

درس واحد وستين

ذماري بصنعانيين

كان به واحد ذماري واثنين من صنعا وقاموا تسايروا ، والاثنين من صنعا بشنوا يزيدوا علي صاحب ذمار بحذقهم . أول ما يكون ذبحوا لهم دجاجة وطبخوها حتى حطّلوها . فقالوا أهل صنعا : "من عد آية من القرآن جرّ وصلة ." فالأول من أهل صنعا قال : "فك رقبة " وأكل الرقبة . والثاني قال : "ما يطير الطير إلا بجاحه" وأكل الجناح . وصاحب ذمار قال : "إذا لفّت الساق بالساق يومئذ ربك للمساق" وأكل الدجاجة بكلها .

من بعد فعلوا لهم تعزبة وجمعوا الطلي والبرّ والسمن ، تغدوا على البر والسمن ، والطلي فعلوه للصبح . من بعد قالوا : "من ترايا الرأي الطيب قام يأكل الطلي" والوعد بينهم للصبح . فمن بعد قاموا الصبح . صاحب صنعا قال لأخوه : "ما ترايييت ؟" قال : "ترايييت إنّي عرجت السماء ." وأخوه قال : "إني ترايييت إني دخلت الجنة" ، وصاحب ذمار قد قام يأكل . قالوا : "ما ترايييت يا صاحب ذمار؟" قال : "إني ترايييت واحد عرج السماء وواحد دخل الجنة فقمت أكلت الطلي قبل أن يأتيني ملك الموت !"

وليلة ثاني يوم جلسوا للعشيء وقد الذماري راقد وقاموا يخزّقوا الكيس حقه بالفتيلة والذماري قام طريق الحمار . بكّع مشافر الحمار ـ المشفر الأعلى والمشفر الأسفل ـ وجلسوا للصبح وقاموا يقوّموا الذماري . قالوا : "ياذماري ! قم ! قم ! قد النجوم خرّت فوق كيسك ." قال : "قد أبسرت الحمار يضحك على الكيس حقّي !"

U N I T 6 2

I. TEXT

fi l-Hammaam

'az-zawj: 'ayn 'ummak ya waladi?

'al-walad: hum saaru[1] l-Hammaam ya bih, w-ana bayn uubih li-xwaati.

'az-zawj: kam laha min Hiin saarat?

'al-walad: laha min aS-SubH li-ɗalHiin.

'az-zawj: min aS-SubH li-ɗalHiin w-ma gad jawʃ[2]?

'al-walad: ma gad lahum 'illa 'arba9 saa9aat bass min Hiin garrabat lana S-SabuuH li-ɗalHiin.

'az-zawj: 'arba9 saa9aat w-'ummak fi l-Hammaam w-l-jahhaal mufallatiin...waaHid 9aaTiʃ w-waaHid jaawi9 w-l-muhimm.....

'al-walad: gad ɗawla 'ummi Suurathum jaw[3] ya bih.

'az-zawj: hayya! 'iHmil iftaH!
('az-zawja tadxul)

'az-zawja: 'aah! 'aaah! 'aaah!

'az-zawj:: maa gad bih la-l-waniin? maa gad bih! 'al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama[4]! riHla sa9iida[5]!

'az-zawja: lilma? w-'ayn saafart? 'ana sirt atHammam.

'az-zawj: galladiʃ aLLaah! 'arba9 saa9aat w-anti bi-titHammami! law sirti titHammami fi l-baHr al-'aHmar fi l-Hodayda 'in gad ji'ti. 'amma haaɗa l-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama. huw ɗa baynana w-bayn al-Hammaam xaTwatayn!

'az-zawja: 'aah! 'aah! law tibsiru kayf Haalat al-Hammaam! law ma kuntʃ mare Humayʃ[6] la bagayt la-l-maGrib maaʃ Gayr la-ġ-ġuhr.

'az-zawj: lilma? 9a-ti9miru lahum al-Hammaam 9imaara?

'az-zawja: 9imaara! wuSult w-l-'aHwaaġ allaɗi fi l-xizaana l-xaarijiyya musaddadaat. 'adxul la-l-xazaa'in ad-daaxiliyya w-la-S-Sadr w-inna fawg kull Hawġ θamaan 'aw 9aʃar nisaa'. riji9t 'ila l-xizaana l-xaarijiyya. da9ayt al-Hammamiya. gult: "iftaHi l-Hawġ!" gaalat: "huw xalwa la-bayt fulaan." gult laha: "'iftaHi l-Hawġ aθ-θaani!"

gaalat-li: "9a-tiji marat fulaan w-huw xalwa." gult laha: "w-ana marat fulaan." gaalat: "ma bayt fulaan saa9 bayt fulaan. hin gad jayn la-9indi 'ams al-9aʃi w-'addaw 9arboon 9iʃriin riyaal. w-anti maa 9a-tiddayli?" jaawabtaha: "ʃa-ddiiliʃ riyaalayn b-gadr Haali." galat: "hayya siiri! 'ij9ali biha bir9i. 'al-muhimm la'akaθθirliʃ al-hidaar w-ʃ-ʃuka." wuSlu 'ahl al-xalwa bi-ʃimmu d-dunya jiifa. wuSlu w-fiihum naxiiT. ma gaaluuʃ Hatta s-salaamu 9alaykum, 'illa saa9 al-jimiin saakitaat, w-ðiik as-saa9a tudxul al-Hammaamiya tiftaH lahin al-'aHwaaḍ w-tSabbinhin. jarrayt nafsi w-daxalt al-xizaana d-daaxiliyya w-gambart 'asaarib ba9d θamaan niswaan w-huw Hawḍ yisa9 tanak mee'."

'al-zawj: ma 9indiʃ Hijja, w-aʃti 'aziid-liʃ 'inna 9indima yudxul ar-rijaal al-Hammaam ba9d an-nisee' ykuun al-waSax fi kull makaan: 'al-gaa9 malyaan w-l-'aHwaaḍ malyaana min muxallafaat an-nisee' fa ʃamm al-Hammaam yiGiθθ an-nafs w-r-rijaal ma yiftaHuuʃ lahum al-'aHwaaḍ saa9 an-niswaan law-ma yGassilu li-'anfushum li'anna gad 'axuuna l-Hammaami ma yitnaazalʃ Hatta yGassil al-Hammaam ma billa yisaayibu lahum ar-rijaal min al-maGTas w-ba9da yijlis 9ala mahd w-xubbaaS[7]: waaHid bi-yaGTus yadda w-hiy malyaana Saabuun w-waaHid bi-yaGruf b-maGraf ligiih fi l-gaa9 bayn al-waSax w-waaHid bi-yaGruf b-dalw w-waaHid b-baardi w-haaða kulla b-sabab al-Hammaamiin al-mas'uuliin 9ala n-naḍaafa w-l-muHaafaḍa 9ala salaamat al-muwaaTiniin w-buTTaal aT-Tam9 w-'axð al-fuluus 'illa l-laazima w-bass hiy riyaal waaHid 9ala l-mare walla r-rajjaal w-ykuun al-jamii9 9aynayn fi wacc w-maabiʃ daa9i li-l-xalwa w-n-naxiiT w-l-mufaaxara wasT al-Hammaamaat. gad yakfi mufaaxara fawg as-sayyaaraat w-t-tafaariiT w-9aad 'aʃti 'aguul li-'ixwaanna l-Hammaamiin 'igtani9u ʃwayya li'anna wazaarat al-'awgaaf ma bi-tjurrʃ minkum 'illa 'iijaar ramzi w-'antu b-Gayr Tama9 w-lahaj w-Haafiḍu 9ala n-naḍaafa li'anna

l-Hammaam bi-yudxula l-mariiḍiin w-Gayr al-mariiðiin
w-'asra9-ma tintagil al-9adwee' min waaHid 'ila waaHid fa
yajib 9alaykum an-naḍaafa daa'iman w-gism al-wigaaya
'a9tagid 'inna 9a-yisma9 haaða w-yiʃrif 9ala l-Hammaamaat.

II. VOCABULARY

'uubah (l-)	(yuubih) to look after s.o.
min Hiin	conj. since (the time)
garrab	II to give; to offer. syn. gaddam
mufallat	(-iin) p.p. set at liberty, on one's own
ðawla	dem. pron. those, short for ðawlaa'
'iHmil!	i.e. 'iHmil nafsak! Go right away!
waniin	v.n. groaning, moaning
riHla	(-aat) trip; journey
gallad	II to take control over. galladiʃ aLLaah! God's curse be upon you! Damn you!
Humayʃ	(-iin) aggressive, assertive
9amar	(yi9mir) to build, construct
9imaara	(-aat, 9amaayir) building. s. binaaya
xizaana	(xazaa'in) place in which water is stored in a public bath
musaddad	(-iin) p.p. turned off; blocked
Hammaami	(-yiin) public bath owner or worker. f. Hammaamiya
xalwa	place of retreat or recess
9arboon	deposit, money deposited
ja9al b-	(yij9al) to buy
bir9i	coll. split peas; lentils
kaθθar	II to increase, augment
hidaar	v.n. chatter, prattle
ʃuka	v.n. complaining. var. ʃakwa
ʃamm	(yʃimm) to smell
jiifa	v.n. stinking smell
naxiiT	v.n. haughtiness, pride

jamana	(jimiin) pitcher made of pottery
saakit	(-iin) act. part. silent; quiet
jarr	(yjurr) to drag; to pull
saarab	III to stand in line, queue
wisi9	(yisa9) to hold, have capacity for
tanak	(tiniik) tin container
waSax	v.n. dirt, filth
gaa9	(gii9aan) floor of a room
muxallafaat	leftovers; refuse
niswaan	women. var. nisee', nisaa'. s. mare
ʃamm	v.n. act of smelling
Gaθθ	(yiGiθθ) to cause to vomit; to irritate
tanaazal	VI to condescend
maGTas	(maGaaTis) bathtub; plunge bath
GaTas	(yaGTus) to dip s.th. into water
Garaf	(yaGruf) to ladle, e.g., water from a basin
maGraf	(maGaarif) ladle, scoop
dalw	(dlaaw) rubber bucket, pail
baardi	(-yaat, bawaarid) metal or plastic bucket
naʂaafa	v.n. cleanliness, cleanness
muHaafaʂa (9ala)	v.n. maintenance (of), safeguarding
buTTaal	v.n. nullification
laazim	(-iin) adj. necessary, required
mufaaxara	v.n. boasting, bragging
wasT	prep. in the middle of
tafruTa	(tafaariiT) women's gatherings, sessions, incl. qat sessions
wazaarat al-'awgaaf	ministry of religious endowments
ramzi	(-yyiin) nominal
lahaj	v.n. greed for money
Haafaʂ 9ala	III to maintain, safeguard s.th.
ntagal	VIII to be communicated (disease)

9adwaa'	v.n.	infection, contagion
daa'iman	adv.	always
wigaaya	v.n.	prevention
'aʃraf 9ala	IV	to supervise

III. NOTES

1,2 The honorific plural is used instead of the singular: saaru instead of saarat and jawʃ instead of ja'atʃ.

3 It seems to me that they (i.e., the wife) have come.

4 Welcome back!

5 I hope you had a nice trip.

6 Humayʃ should have been Humayʃa a feminine adjective modifying mare. The masculine form is used for intensification of the meaning.

7 9ala mahd w-xubbaaS a phrase used to describe a state of affairs that is topsy-turvy

درس إثنين وستين

في الحمام

الزوج : أين أمك يا ولدي ؟

الولد : هم ساروا الحمام يابه ، وأنا بين أوبه لخواتي .

الزوج : كم لها من حين سارت ؟

الولد : لها من الصبح لذ الحين .

الزوج : من الصبح لذ الحين وما قد جوش ؟

الولد : ما قد لهم الا أربع ساعات ، بس من حين قرّبت لنا الصبوح لذ الحين .

الزوج : أربع ساعات وأمك في الحمام ، والجهال مفلّتين ، واحد عاطش ، واحد جاوع ، والمهم ...

الولد : قد ذولا أمي صورتهم جو يابه .

الزوج : هيّا ! إحمل افتح !

الزوجة : آه ! آه !

الزوج : ما قد به للونين ؟ ما قد به ؟ الحمد لله على السلامة ! رحلة سعيدة !

الزوجة : للما ؟ واين سافرت ؟ سرت أتحمم .

الزوج : قلّدش الله ! أربع ساعات وانت بتتحمّمي؟ لو سرت تتحمّمي في البحر الأحمر في الحديدة إن قد جئت . أما هذا الحمد لله على العافية . هو ذا بيننا وبين الحمام خطوتين !

الزوجة : آه ! آه ! لو تبسروا كيف حالة الحمام ! لو ما كنتش مرة حميش لبقيت للمغرب ماش غير للظهر .

الزوج : للما ؟ عتعمروا لهم الحمام عمارة ؟

الزوجة : عمارة ! وصلت والأحواض الذي في الخزانة الخارجية مسدّدات . أدخل للخزائن الداخلية والصدر وإنه فوق كل حوض ثمان أو عشر نساء . رجعت الى الخزانة الخارجية . دعيت الحمامية . قلت : "أفتحي الحوض !" قالت : "هو خلوة لبيت فلان ." قلت لها : "افتحي لي الحوض الثاني !" قالت : "عتجي مرة فلان وهو خلوة ." قلت لها : "وأنا مرة فلان ." قالت : "ما بيت فلان ساع بيت فلان . هن قد جين لعندي أمس العشي

وأدّوا عربون عشرين ريال . وأنت ما عتأدّيلي ؟" جاوبتها : "شادّيلش ريالين بقدر حالي ." قالت : "هيّا سيري ! إجعلي بها برعي !" المهم لا أكثر لك الهدار والشكوى . وصلوا أهل الخلوة بشمّوا الدنيا جيفة . وصلوا وفيهم نخيط . ما قالوش حتى السلام عليكم ، إلا ساع الجمين ساكتات ، وذيك الساعة تدخل الحمامية تفتح لهن الأحواض وتصبّنهم . جرّيت نفسي ودخلت الخزانة الداخلية وقمبرت أسارب بعد شمانية نساء وهو حوض يسع تنك ماء بس ."

الزوج : ما عندش حجّة ، وأشتي أزيد لش عندما يدخل الرجال الحمام بعد النساء يكون الوسخ في كل مكان : القاع مليان والأحواض مليانة من مخلفات النسوان ، فشمّ الحمام يغثّ النفس والرجال ما يفتحوش لهم الأحواض ساع النسوان لو ما يغسّلوا لأنفسهم لأنه قد أخونا الحمّامي ما عاد يتنازلش حتى يغسّل الحمام ما بلاّ يسايبوا لهم الرجال من المغطس وبعده يجي لش على مهد وخبّاص : واحد بيغطس يدّه وهي مليانة صابون ، واحد بيغرف بمغرف لقيه في القاع بين الوسخ ، واحد بيغرف بدلو وواحد بباردي وهذا كله بسبب الحمامين المسؤولين على النظافة والمحافظة على سلامة المواطنين وبطّال الطمع وأخذ الفلوس إلا اللازمة وبس هي ريال واحد على المرة ولاّ الرجّال ويكون الجميع عينان في وجه ، ومابش داعي للخلوة والنخيط والمفاخرة وسط الحمامات . قد يكفي مفاخرة فوق السيارات والتفاريط وعاد أشتي أقول لأخواتي الحمامين اقتنعوا شويّه لأنّه وزارة الأوقاف ما تبجرش منكم إلا ايجار رمزي ، وأنتو بغير طمع ولهج ، وحافظوا على النظافة لأنّ الحمام بيدخله المريضين وغير المريضين ، وأسرع ما تنتقل العدوى من واحد الى واحد ، فيجب عليكم النظافة دائما ، وقسم الوقاية اعتقد إنّه عيسمع هذا ويشرف على الحمامات .

U N I T 6 3

I. TEXT

'al-9urs

'al-walad yiʃti yitzawwaj gaalu-la: "ʃee' zalaT?"[1] gaal: "'ii." tsiir 'umm walla xalata la-bayt fulaan. yibsirayn al-bint, hiy Haaliya 'adiiba... laa jaw m-maaʃ hiy Haaliya w-'adiiba ysiiru la-bayt fulaan yibsirayn al-bint an-naahiya; laa hiy naahiya ysiirayn yguulayn la-l-'ab: "ligiina bint fulaan 'adiiba naðiifa kaamila. yguul la-waaHid min al-jiiraan: "'amaana[2] gul li-fulaan 9a-niji 9inda min sibb nuxTub al-bint la-'ibnana." w-ysiiru fi l-yawm al-maw9uud, yʃillu l-gaat w-l-madaa9a w-'arba9iin girʃ willa θalaaθiin kamma bih al-HaaSil[3]. ysiiru yitku, w-ba9da yitHaaku w-l-mutawassiT yguul: "ya fulaan! ji'na nuxTub bintakum la-'ibn fulaan." yguul: "marHaba!" w-ba9da yunðugu Saarmiyat 'umm al-Hareewa w-yiddu gadrahum[4] daraahim kamma bih. yguul: 'f-'ayy Hiin yuuga9 al-9urs?" yguulu: "yawm kaðа fi ʃ-ʃahr al-fulaani." yguulu: "niʃti ʃarT." yguulu: "maa huw maTluubakum?" yguulu: "sirwaal Haraazi w-gamiiS w-SummaaTa w———" yguulu: "marHaba! haaða ʃ-ʃarT maHmuul."

yawm að-ðibbaal Hagg al-Hareew

ysiiru yawm θaani yjurru l-kiswa w-yitlaagu yawm al-mii9aad ba9d aS-Salaa. yimliku w-yuktub waaHid fagiih waragat al-milkeh[5], w-yawm θaani yitSarrafu maSaariif al-9urs.

w-ba9da tsiir 'umm al-Hareew la-l-buyuut tguul: "fulaana! 9indana l-yawm al-fulaani ðibbaal," w-tsiir taHlif 9ala bayt al-Hareewa, w-yijayn ba9d al-Gadaa' b-faarix; yitimmayn at-tafruTa w-yruuHayn lahin kull waaHida la-baytaha.

yawm að-ðibbaal Hagg al-Hareewa

w-ba9da 'umm al-Hareewa tsiir taHlif 9ala l-jiiraan w-allaði ta9rifhum w-bayt al-Hareew w-tguul: "jaw[6] 9indana ðibbaal!" ysiiru ba9d al-Gadaa' b-faarix gahwa yitfarraTayn w-yGannayn fi l-Hareewa w-'ummaha w-fi 'abuuha; w-ba9da ysiirayn an-nisee' buyuutahin.

Hammaam w-nagʃ

ba9da tsiir 'umm al-Hareewa S-SubH la-bayt al-Hareew tguul: "jaw al-Hammaam w-n-nagʃ!" yguulu: "marHaba!" ysiiru la-Hammaam an-nisee' ma9 al-Hareewa w-hiy tilbas aθ-θiyaab: gamiiS w-9agd w-baʃmag juux. ysiirayn al-Hammaam yiksiru bayṣa[7] w-tudxul al-Hareewa titHammam, 'al-Hareewa waHdaha l-'awwala w-tuxruj traa9i fil-maxla9 w-n-nisee' yudxulayn yitHammamayn kullahin w-yuxrujayn w-yiksiru bayṣa 9indima tuxruj al-Hareewa min baab al-Hammaam. fi l-bayt gad hum ysabbiru l-Gadaa'; tudxul al-Hareewa min baab bayt 'abuuha w-yiksiru bayṣa; w-yilgawha b-l-mazaahir w-θ-θurayya w-ba9da yziffu l-Hareewa min ad-dahliiz la-l-makaan; yigambirayn ʃwayya lawma yHaδδiru l-Gadaa' w-ba9da yguumayn yitGaddayn w-yirja9ayn yitgahwayn w-l-Hareewa tajlis hiy w-l-muzayyina tanguʃha.

bayt al-Hareew yiju b-faarix w-kiswa; ygambirayn ʃwayya w-ba9da 'umm al-Hareew tmakkin al-muzayyina l-bugʃa; w-n-nisee' al-mutaGaddiyaat yguumayn kull waaHida tiddi TarHaha w-n-nisee' yruuHayn lahin.

laylat al-9aʃaa'

w-fi l-yawm ar-raabi9 min aS-SubH ybaxxiru l-mee' w-yijlisu la-wagt al-Gadaa' w-tiji l-misabbira ta9jin w-ygaSgiSu l-xuṣraa' w-l-misabbira trakkib aT-Tabiix w-tguum taxbiz.

law-ma gad ar-rijaal jaw kulluhum saa9at Hda9ʃar w-nuSS[8] yguumu yit9aʃʃu w-yitHaaku w-ba9da yguulu r-rijaal: "9a-tsiiru l-Hammaam?" ba9ṣuhum yguul: "9a-nsiir nSalli w-nraa9i la-z-zaffa." 'al-Hareew ysiir yitHammam ma9 ar-rijaal. ba9da yiji al-muzayyin la-l-Hammaam b-T-Taasa w-l-'itriikaat; yuuSalu n-naas w-l-muzayyin la-baab al-Hammaam yibtari9u; w-ba9da yuxruj al-Hareew min al-Hammaam w-yziffuu b-T-Taasa w-yguulu: "Salli ya rabbi 9ala Taaha l-Habiib!"[9]

'ar-rijaal yizmilu tijaah al-Hareew w-yuuSalu law-ma hum gariibiin min al-bayt w-l-muzayyin ywaxxir b-T-Taasa yuṣrub bar9a, w-hum yilguu b-ʃ-ʃam9 w-θ-θurayya w-l-'itriikaat, yziffuu w-ygarriHu b-l-girriiH w-yHarrigu al-gaSab.

w-ba9da yiTla9 al-Hareew la-baab al-makaan yguul: "'as-salaamu 9alaykum!" yguulu: "9alaykum as-salaam." yudxul ygambir, yidduu-la gahwa w-yijlis al-Hareew ma9 ar-rijaal yxazzinu w-yiʃrabu madaa9a la-saa9at sab9.

w-ba9da ysiiru 9aʃarat 'anfaar b-l-baGla; yuuSalu bayt al-Hareewa. ygambiru, yiddu lahum gaat w-yid9u 'abu l-Hareewa. tuxruj al-Hareewa, yrakkibha 'abuuha fawg al-baGla, yilawwaw biha θalaaθ marraat w-ysiiru 9aʃara min bayt al-Hareew w-9aʃara min bayt al-Hareewa la-bayt al-Hareew.

tudxul al-Hareewa; yiksiru bayḍa 9ala l-baab w-yTalli9uuha 'abuuha w-9ammaha w-yruuHu lahum.

w-ba9da yuxrujayn an-nisee' min 9indaha w-tibga l-muzayyina w-r-rijaal yziffu l-Hareew la-baab al-Hijra, w-yinzilu w-huw yudxul la-9indaha w-yiddi l-ftʃee' w-tuxruj al-muzayyina w-hum yismiru willa ma ʃtaw.

II. VOCABULARY

'adiib	(-iin) = mu'addab well-mannered
kaamil	(-iin) perfect; complete, full
'amaana	v.n. reliability, trustworthiness
min sibb	conj. = 9ala sibb in order to
maw9uud	p.p. appointed set (date)
kammabih	that which is there
HaaSil	act. part. found; on hand
tka	(yitki) to meet, talk and chew qat
mutawassiT	(-iin) go-between
marHaba	= 'ahlan wa sahlan Welcome!
naḍag	(yunḍug) to throw s.th. on the floor
Sarmiya	(-aat) woman's headdress
daraahim	= fuluus, zalaT money
maTluub	(maTaaliib) requirement
sirwaal	(saraawiil) woman's baggy pants
Haraaz	town in the Y.A.R., famous for making saraawiil

Haraazi	(-yyiin) of or characteristic of Haraaz
maHmuul	(-iin) p.p. accepted. haaɠa ʃ-ʃarT maHmuul. This condition is accepted.
ɠibbaal	wedding celebration
kiswa	clothing; clothes
milkeh	w.n. ownership
talaaga	VI to meet with each other
taSarraf	V to pay out money for
Halaf 9ala	(yaHlif) to invite
faarix	(fawaarix) coffee pot
tafarraT	V to chatter in a tafruTa
Ganna (fi)	II to sing the praises of s.o.
9agd	(9uguud) necklace
baʃmag	(baʃaamig) pair of shoes
juux	coll. broadcloth
maxla9	(maxaali9) place in a public bath where people take off their clothes
mazhara	(mazaahir) flower vase
θurayya	(-aat) candelabra
dahliiz	(dahaaliiz) hallway, corridor
zaff	(yziff) to conduct a bride or a bridegroom in solemn procession
Haḡḡar	II = sabbar to prepare, get s.th. ready
nagaʃ	(yunguʃ) to paint; to engrave
makkan	II to give
bugʃa	(bugaʃ) bag of money; purse
TarH	wedding gift (usually money) to the bride
baxxar	II to perfume with incense
misabbira	(-aat) dough kneader and cook
xuḡraa'	vegetables
9ajan	(ya9jin) to knead
rakkab	II to place, e.g., uncooked food on fire: rakkab aT-Tabiix
Tabiix	cooked food or food prepared for cooking

xabaz	(yaxbiz) to bake bread
'itriik	(-aat) kerosine lantern
btara9	VIII to dance in a wedding procession
zamal	(yazmil) to chant
tijaah	adv. towards
waxxar	II to move backwards or aside
bar9a	(-aat) dance tune
ʃam9	coll. candles. unit ʃam9a
garraH	II to set off a firecracker
girriiH	coll. firecrackers. unit girriiHa
Harrag	II to burn s.th.
gaSab	coll. stalks of cereal grasses. unit gaSaba
ʃirib	(yiʃrab) to smoke. ʃirib madaa9a. He smoked a water-pipe.
baGl	(biGaal) mule
rakkab	II to make s.o. ride
Talla9	II to take out s.o. or s.th.
lawwa (b-)	II to circle, go around (with) s.o.
Hijra	(-aat) anteroom
nazal	(yinzil) to come down, get down
ftʃee'	money given by a bridegroom to his bride on the wedding night
samar	(yasmir) to chat, talk; to rejoice

III. NOTES

[1] i.e., "Do you have any money?"

[2] if you please

[3] the amount of money they have, or the amount of money they have put aside for this purpose

[4] -hum refers to the bride's folks. The amount of money the bridegroom's folks give is proportional to the social status of the bride's folks.

[5] the marriage contract

[6] jaw! here means ta9aalu! come (m.p.)!

[7] Breaking an egg in this context is a sign of a good omen.

[8] according to a sundial

[9] Taaha is one of the names of the prophet Muhammad

درس ثلاثة وستين

العـرس

الولد يشتي يتزوج قالوا له : "شيء زلط ؟" قال : "إي ." تسير أمه ولا خالته الى بيت فلان يبسرين البنت هي حالية أديبة ... لا جو ، وماش هي حالية وأديبة يسيروا لبيت فلان يبسرين البنت الناهية ، لا هي ناهية يسيرين يقولين للأب : "لقينا بنت فلان أديبة نظيفة كاملة ." يقول لواحد من الجيران : "أمانة قل لفلان عنجي عنده من سب نخطب البنت لإبننا." ويسيروا في اليوم الموعود يشلّوا القات والمداعة وأربعين قرش ولا عشرين ولا ثلاثين كمّا به الحامل . يسيروا يتكوا ، وبعده يتحاكوا والمتوسط يقول : "يا فلان ! جئنا نخطب بنتكم لإبن فلان ." يقول : "مرحبا!" وبعده يتذاقوا صرمية أم الحريوة ويدّوا قدرهم دراهم كمابه . يقولوا : "أي حين يوقع العرس ؟" يقولوا : "يوم كذا في الشهر الفلاني ." يقولوا : "نشتي شرط ." يقولوا : " ما هو مطلوبكم ؟" يقولوا: "سروال حرازي وقميص وصمّاطة وتزجه قسطية ." يقولوا : "محمول هذا الشرط ."

يوم الذبّال حق الحريو

يسيروا يوم ثاني يجرّوا الكسوة ويتلاقوا يوم الميعاد بعد الملاة . يملكوا ويكتب واحد فقيه ورقة الملكة . ويوم ثاني يتصرّفوا مصاريف العرس .

وبعده تسير أم الحريو للبيوت تقول : "فلانة ! عندنا اليوم الفلاني ذبّال ." وتسير تحلف على بيت الحريوة ويجين بعد الغداء بفارخ ، يتمّين التفرطة ويروحين لهن كل واحدة لبيتها .

يوم الذبّال حق الحريوة

وبعده أم الحريو تسير تحلف على الجيران والذي تعرفهم وبيت الحريو وتقول : "جو عندنا ذبّال ." يسيروا بعد الغداء بفارخ قهوة يتفرّضين ويغنين في الحريوة وأمها وفي أبوها ، وبعدها يسيرين النساء بيوتهن .

حمّام ونقش

بعده تسير أم الحريوة الصبح لبيت الحريو تقول : "جو الحمّام والنقش !" يقولوا : "مرحبا !" يسيروا الحمام النساء مع الحريوة وهي تلبس الثياب : قميص وعقد وبشماق جوخ . يسيرين الحمام يكسروا بيضة وتدخل الحريوة . تتحمّم ، الحريوة وحدها الأوّلة وتخرج تراعي في المخلع والنساء يدخلين يتحمّمين كلهن ويخرجين ويكسروا بيضة عندما تخرج الحريوة من باب الحمام . في البيت قد هم يسبّروا الغداء ، تدخل الحريوة من باب بيت أبوها ويكسروا بيضة ، ويلقوها بالمزاهر والشريّا ، وبعده يزفوا الحريوة من الدهليز للمكان ، يقمبرين شوية لو ما يحظّروا الغداء وبعده يقومين يتغدّين ويرجعين يتقهوين والحريوة تجلس هي والمزيّنة تنقشها .

بيت الحريو يجوا بفارغ والكسوة يقمبرين شوية وبعده أم الحريو تمكّن المزينة البقشة ، والنساء المتغديات يقومين كل واحدة تذي طرح والنساء يروحين لهن .

ليلة العشاء

وفي اليوم الرابع من الصبح يبخّروا الماء ويجلسوا لوقت الغداء وتجيء المسبّرة تعجن ويقمقموا الخظراء والمسبّرة تركّب الطبيخ وتقوم تخبز .

لوما قد الرجال جو كلهم ساعة حدعشر ونص يقوموا يتعشوا ويتحاكوا وبعده يقولوا الرجال : "عتسيروا الحمام ؟" بعضهم يقول : "عنسير نصلي ونراعي للزفة" والحريو يسير يتحمم مع الرجال . بعده يجيء المزين للحمّام بالطاسة والإتريكات ، يوصلوا الناس والمزيّن لباب الحمّام يبترعوا ، وبعده يخرج الحريو من الحمّام ويزفّوه بالطاسة ويقولوا : "صلي يا ربّي على طه الحبيب !"

الرجال يزملوا تجاه الحريو ويوصلوا لوما قدهم قريبين من البيت والمزيّن يوخّر بالطاسة يضرب برعه ، وهم يلقوا بالشمع والشريا والاتريكات ، يزفوه ويقرّحوا بالقريحة ويحرّقوا القصب .

وبعده يطلع الحريو لباب المكان يقول : "السلام عليكم !" يقولوا : "عليكم السلام ." يدخل يقمبر يذّوا له قهوة ويجلس الحريو مع الرجال يخزّنوا ويشربوا مداعة لساعة سبع .

وبعده يسيروا عشرة أنفار بالبغلة ، يوصلوا بيت الحريوة . يقمبروا يذّوا لهم قات ويدعوا أبو الحريوة . تخرج الحريوة ، يركّبها أبوها فوق البغلة ، يلوّوا بها ثلاث

مرات ويسيروا عشرة من بيت الحريو وعشرة من بيت الحريوة لبيت الحريو .

تدخل الحريوة ، يكسروا بيضة على الباب ويطلّعوها أبوها وعمها ويروحوا لـــــهم .

وبعده يخرجين النساء من عندها وتبقى المزينة والرجال يزفوا الحريو لباب الحجرة ،

وينزلوا وهو يدخل لعندها ويذي الفشتاء وتخرج المزينة وهم يسمروا ولا ما شتوا .

U N I T 6 4

I. TEXT

1. Hizwiyat al-malik w-bint al-fagiir

kaan bih rajjaal malik w-ma ma9 'umma 'illa huw. fa-gaam yiʃti yitzawwaj waaHida bint fagiir w-hiya Haaliya gawi w-fiiha jamaal gawi. 'umma gaalat ma 9a-tzawwija 'illa bint 9amma; w-hin θalaaθa banaat 9amma. huw gaal: "ma 9a-tzawwaj 'illa bint al-fagiir." fi laylat ad-duxuul w-huw b-yilbas θiyaab al-9urs, jayn banaat 9amma w-gambarayn fi baab al-makaan w-b-yitHaakayn. 'az-zuGayyara gaalat: "'absiri ya 'uxti 'ibn 9ammi! ya Hummayh Humma[1] min al-mare llaði 'addawha lah: 9awree' w- latgee' w-maaʃ Haaliya w-9arjee'." jaawabat bint 9amma l-wusTa w-gaalat: "lilma 'addawla haaði l-mare ʃ-ʃuu9a?" huw kaan b-yisma9 al-kalaam kulla, fa-fallat al-9urs w-n-naas w-xaraj la-waHda huw w-l-9abd Hagga 'ila l-mafraj. law-ma jaw 'ahlaha b-l-Hareewa w-'adxaluuha 9ind an-niswaan yistajlaynaha, w-ma diryuu kayf yaf9alu 'umm al-Hareew al-malik w-'uxta.

gaamat 'uxt al-Hareew w-libisat libs rajjaali w-daxalat tismir 9ind al-Hareewa, bint al-fagiir, w-muddat al-9urs w-hiy b-titki w-tismir hiy w-l-Hareewa w-ma ðahar la-'ahla w-la-l-Hareewa w-hiy muSaddiga 'innahu l-Hareew. w-ba9da ma zidtʃ libisat al-libs ar-rajjaali, w-ba9da l-Hareewa b-tas'al 'uxt al-Hareew allaði kaanat talbas al-libs ar-rajjaali w-gaalat: "'amaana 'ayn axuuʃ? ma zidʃ 'absarnaa." fa-gaalat: "saar tagaddam huw w-l-9askar," w-l-Hareew jaalis, Haanig fi l-mafraj huw w-l-9abd Hagga, w-l-'umm bi-tguul la-l-Hareewa: "ʃilli la-l-9abd mee' yiʃrab!" ʃallat al-bardag malyaan b-l-mee' w-kaʃafat waccaha w-gaalat la-l-9abd: "ya 9abd al-xayr[2]! siidak haana 'aw fi l-barr?"[3] daxalat al-maHabba fi galb al-9abd la-l-Hareew. Haaka l-9abd siida w-gaal-la 'inna haaði l-mre bi-tjii' taddii-la l-bardag malyaan mee' kull yawm w-fiiha jamaal la yuujad miθla[4] w-b-tguul la-l-9abd: "ya 9abd al-xayr! siidak haana 'aw fi l-barr?" fa-jaawab al-Hareew al-Haanig, gaal: "'ana 'aʃti 'absirha." gaal al-9abd la-siida 'al-Hareew: "wagt-ma tiji, gambir fi l-mafraj."

ba9da jaa'at bint al-fagiir al-Hareewa w-gaalat la-l-9abd: "9anbar! ya 9anbar[5]! siidak haana 'aw fi l-barr?" gaal laha l-9abd:" "gad huw haana." 'adxalat al-bardag la-l-malik allaʤi maaʃ daari 'innaha Hareewata w-zawjata, fa-gaam yizgamha fa-naTTal al-bardag fawg rijlaha law-ma xaraj ad-damm. min ʃiddat al-Gaθi 9alayha ʃaTT min 9imaamata w-rabaT rijlaha w-raaHat la-l-bayt. taxabbat minna w-ma zid saaratʃ tʃill al-mee', la la-l-9abd wala la.

daxalat al-maHabba fi galb al-malik, fa-daxal al-bayt w-gad huw 9aaʃig laha; daxal yurgud w-huw mariiʤ. Talab yiʃti yiʃrab mee', fa-'adxalat la al-mee' al-Hareewa wa-maaʃ huw daari 'innaha marata w-9araf al-9imaama fi rijlaha. da9a 'umma w-gaal laha: "man jaa' b-haaʤi l-mare la-9indiʃ?" gaalat 'umma: "ya waladi! haaʤi maratak allaʤi harabt minnaha Hiin kaadaynaha banaat 9ammak."

1. Hizwiyat ar-rajjaal al-Gabi

kaan bih waaHid rajjaal ʃaakir li-marata w-yguul: "marati ma miθlaha w-maabiʃ 'aHsan minnaha; bi-txaaf la yibsirha l-Gurraabi fi l-jubaa'. gaal SaaHiba: "kaʤʤaab; maabiʃ 'anjas minnaha. sir taHammam w-jii' 'idda9i l-maraʤ gawi w-maratak 9a-t'addii-lak al-9ilaaj w-'idda9i l-mawt w-gul li-maratak: "id9i jaarana 'awSii." 'ar-rajjaal saar taHammam w-fa9al ma gaal-la SaaHiba w-l-mare da9at al-jaar w-jaa'. tamaywat az-zawj w-kaanat al-mare 9a-tSiiH b-l-bukee', fa-gaal laha jaaruhum: "'uskuti, ma 9alayʃ! gad ʤa zawjiʃ maat, 'ana rajjaal badal ar-rajjaal, laakin ma tSuHHi-li[6] min al-layla 'illa ba9dima tugbuSi zawjiʃ sab9 marraat w-tatfuli wacca sab9 marraat." fa9alat ma gaal laha w-zayyadat gabSa w-tafla. zawjaha gaam w-SaaHiba gaal laha: "'ana ma gult liʃ taf9ali 'illa sab9 maarraat w-zayyadti gabSa w-tafla." gaal ar-rajjaal: "'al-Hamdu lillaah! kaan fawg galbi Gamm w-'anti ya mare Taalig."[7]

II. VOCABULARY

Hizwiya	(Hazaawi) anecdote, tale
malik	(muluuk) king

zuGayyar (-iin) dim. of SaGiir var. zaGiir young
humm v.n. sorrow; anxiety
9awree' f. of 'a9war one-eyed. p. 9uraan
'altag (litgiin) stammerer. f. latgee'
'a9raj (9urj) lame person. f. 9arjee'
wusTa f. of 'awsaT middle
ʃuu9 (-iin) ugly looking
9abd (9abiid) slave; servant
stajla X to find out, discover s.th. about s.o.
libs v.n. style of clothing
rajjaali adj. of rajjaal man-like
ʕahar (yaʕhar) to appear, seem. ʕahar l- to appear, seem to s.o.
muSaddig (-iin) act. part. having believed
ma zidʃ no longer, not any more
tagaddam V to come forward; to be in front of
bardag (baraadig) glass (of s.th.); cup
kaʃaf (yakʃif) to uncover
siid (asyaad) master, lord
barr land, as opp. to baHr sea
maHabba v.n. liking; love
wujid (yuujad) pass. to be found
wagt-ma conj. when, at the time when
zagam (yizgam) to hold, grab
naTTal II to cause s.th. to fall down
ʃidda v.n. intensity; force
Gaθi v.n. apprehension, concern
ʃaTT (yʃuTT) to tear, rip s.th.
rabaT (yarbuT) to tie, tie up
taxabba' V to hide oneself
9aaʃig (l-) (-iin) in love (with) s.o.
harab (min) (yahrub) to run away (from) s.o. or s.th.
kaad (ykiid) to deceive, dupe s.o.
ʃaakir (l-) (-iin) act. part. thankful (for)

jubaa'	('ajbiya) ceiling; roof
kaððaab	(-iin) liar
najis	(-iin) dirty; impure. elat. 'anjas
dda9a	VIII to feign, pretend
'awSa	(yiwSi) to make one's will
tamaywat	(yatamaywat) to pretend to be dead
SaaH	(ySiiH) to cry out, yell
bukaa'	v.n. crying, weeping
SaHH (l-)	(ySuHH) to be lawful to s.o.
gabaS	(yagbuS) to pinch
tafal	(yatful) to spit
zayyad	II to increase, augment s.th.
gabSa	(-aat) n. of instance a pinch
tafla	(-aat) n. of instance one instance of spitting
Gamm	v.n. worry, anxiety
Taalig	(-aat) divorced, repudiated

III. NOTES

[1] i.e., woe will befall him.

[2] Polite way of addressing a slave.

[3] barra here means "outside the house".

[4] yuujad is the imperfect passive of wujid 'to be found', which is rare in SA. laa yuujad miθla, from literary Arabic, means "no equal can be found".

[5] 9anbar (pron. 9ambar) is a traditional name or epithet of a slave.

[6] ma tSuHHii-li... 'You will not be my lawful wife...'

[7] Taalig (said of a woman) is an active participle, but it has the meaning of the corresponding, passive participle, i.e. divorced.

درس أربعة وستين

١ ـ حزوية الملك وبنت الفقير

كان به رجّال ملك وما مع أمه إلا هو . فقام بشتي يتزوج واحدة بنت فقير وهي حالية قوي وفيها جمال قوي . أمه قالت : "ما عاتزوّجه إلا بنت عمّه وهن ثلاثة بنات عمّه ." هو قال : "ما عاتزوّج إلا بنت الفقير ." فليلة الدخول وهو بيلبس ثياب العرس ، جين بنات عمّه وقصرين في باب المكان وبيتحاكين . الزغيّرة قالت : "أبصري يا أختي إبن عمّي ! همه على همه من المرة الذين أدّبنها له : عوراء ولتقاء وماش حالية وعرجاء." جاوبت بنت عمه الوسطى وقالت : "للما أدّوا له هذه المرة الشوعة ؟" هو كان بيسمع الكلام كلّه ، ففلّت العرس والناس وخرج لوحده هو والعبد حقّه الى المفرج . لوما جو أهلها بالحريوة وأدخلوها عند النسوان وما دريوا كيف يفعلوا أم الحريو الملك وأخته .

قامت أخت الحريو لبست لبس رجّالي ودخلت تسمر عند الحريوة ، بنت الفقير ، ومدة العرس وهي بتتكي وتسمر هي والحريوة وما ظهر لأهلها وللحريوة وهي مصدّقة إنّه الحريو . وبعده ما زدش لبست اللبس الرجّالي ، وبعده الحريوة بتسأل أخت الحريو الذي كانت تلبس اللبس الرجّالي وقالت : "أمانة أين أخوش ؟ ما زدش أبسرناه ؟" فقالت : "سار تقدم والعسكر والحريو جالس ، حانق في المفرج هو والعبد حقّه والأم بتقول للحريوة : "شلّي للعبد ماء يشرب ." شلّت البردق مليان بالماء وكشفت وجهها وقالت للعبد : "يا عبد الخير! سيدك هانا أو في البرّ ؟" دخلت المحبّة في قلب العبد للحريو . حاكى العبد سيده وقال له إنّ هذه المرة بتجيء تأدّيله البردق مليان ماء كل يوم وفيها جمال لا يوجد مثله وبتقول للعبد : "يا عبد الخير ! سيدك هانا أو في البرّ ؟" فجاوب الحريو الحانق قال : "أنا أشتي أبسرها ." قال العبد لسيده الحريو : "وقتما تجيء قصر في المفرج ."

بعده جاءت بنت الفقير الحريوة وقالت للعبد : "عنبر ! يا عنبر ! سيدك هانا أو في البر ؟" قال لها العبد : "قد هو هانا ." أدخلت البردق للملك الذي ماش داري إنّها حريوته وزوجته ، فقام يزقمها فوقع البردق فوق رجلها لوما خرج الدم . من شدة شط من عمامته وربط رجلها وراحت للبيت . تخبّت منّه وما زد سارتش تشل الماء لا للعبد ولا له .

دخلت المحبة في قلب الملك فدخل البيت وقد هو عاشق لها ، دخل يرقد وهو مريض .

طلب يشتي يشرب ماء ، فأدخلت له الماء الحريوة وماش هو داري إنّها مرته وعرف العمامة في رجلها . دعا أمّه وقال لها : "من جاء بهذه المرة لعندش ؟" قالت أمه : "يا ولدي ! هذه مرتك الذي هربت منها حين كادينها بنات عمك ."

٢ ـ حزوبة الرجال الغبي

كان به واحد رجّال شاكر لمرته ويقول : "مرتي ما مثلها ومابش أحسن منها ، بتخاف لبسرها الغرّابي في الجباء ." قال صاحبه : "كذّاب ! مابش أنجس منها . سر تحمّم وجيء إدّعي المرض قوي ومرتك عاتاذيلك العلاج ، وإدّعي الموت وقل لمرتك : "إدعي جارنا أوصه !" الرجّال سار تحمم وفعل ما قال له صاحبه والمرة دعت الجار وجاء ، الزوج تميوت وكانت المرة عاتصيح بالبكاء ، فقال لها جارهم : "أسكتي ! ما عليش ! قد ذا زوجش مات ؟ أنا رجّال بدل الرجّال ، لكن ما تصحّي لي من الليلة إلاّ بعد ما تقبصي زوجش سبع مرات وتتفلي في وجهه سبع مرات ." فعلت ما قال لها وزيّدت قبصة وتفلة . زوجها قام وصاحبه قال لها : "أنا ما قلتش تفعلي إلاّ سبع مرات وزيّدت قبصة وتفلة ." قال الرجّال الزوج : " الحمد لله كان فوق قلبي غم وأنت يا مرة طالق ."

U N I T 6 5

I. TEXT

naɠaafat aʃ-ʃaari9

'al-mare: man?

Gaalib: 'iftaHu!

'al-mare: hayya, ya fi9lati fi9la![1] haaɠa gad jaw w-ana ma gad gaTabtʃ.

Gaalib: salaam ya mare! salaam![2]

'al-mare: wa 9alykum as-salaam.

Gaalib: 'aah! 'uff! gadʃee' ma9aana 'akl[3]?

'al-mare: kull ʃee' mawjuud. w-maa lakum bi-tanfuxu? maa gabbih?

Gaalib: ma 'adri. ra'si bi-yuuja9ni w-ɠahri w-baTni.

'al-mare: w-ana gad ra'si bi-yuuja9ni gawi min aS-SubH. 'aLLaah bass ya9lam maa huw haaɠa.

Gaalib: ma 'adri maa huw. w-l-jahhaal 'ayn hum?

'al-mare: mHammad ʃallayta la-9ind jaddata.

Gaalib: w-lilma ʃallaytii?

'al-mare: bass daxal min aʃ-ʃaari9 w-'in gad baTna bi-yuuja9a. jalas yiSiiH. ʃallayta la-9ind jaddata w-9abdaLLa xaraj yil9ab w-faaTima raagida.

Gaalib: 9ajiib! 9ajiib! mHammad bi-yuuja9a baTna w-faaTima raagida w-ana ra'si bi-yuuja9ni w-'anti kaɠaalik. kayf al-xabar[4]? gaduu kulluna 'amraaɠ.

'al-mare: ma 'adriiʃ. waLLa taguulu ma gabbiʃ maraɠ muntaʃir[5]?

Gaalib: maabiʃ maraɠ muntaʃir. ma law ʃee' 'in gad sama9na fi l-'i9laanat, ya9ni fi l-'iɠaa9a w-S-SaHaafa.

'al-mare: kaan maa huw haaɠa?[6]

(waaHid yTagTig 9ala l-baab)

Gaalib: hayya! 'isma9i haaɠa man huw? 'isma9i llaɠi bi-ydugg 9ala l-baab! 'absiri man huw! law huw SaaHib al-fawaakih, guuli-la maabiʃ 'aHad.

'al-mare: 'ayyan fawaakih?

Gaalib: 'absiri bass!

Hajj 9ali: 'al-'ax Gaalib!

'al-mare: na9am na9am. man bi-ydugg al-baab?

Hajj 9ali: 'amaana la huw al-'ax Gaalib mawjuud, guulii-la yanzil la-9indi.

'al-mare: man 'ant?

Hajj 9ali: guulii-la l-Hajj 9ali.

al-mare: naahi.

Gaalib: hayya! man huw?

'al-mare: rajjaal bi-yguul 'inna l-Hajj 9ali.

Gaalib: 'al-Hajj 9ali maa yiʃti?

'al-mare: 'inzilu[7] la-9inda!

Gaalib: 'ahlan wa sahlan b-l-Hajj 9ali!

Hajj 9ali: 'aLLaah yHayyiik!

Gaalib: hayya! tafaḍḍal 'iTlu9!

Hajj 9ali: maabiʃ luzuum, maabiʃ luzuum.

Gaalib: 'iTlu9 ya ðaak!

Hajj 9ali: maabiʃ luzuum ya 'axi, bass 'ana 'aʃti 'akallimak w-aruuH.

Gaalib: hah! hah! salaamatak! maa bad-lak bi-ta9kil?

Hajj 9ali: huw haaða llaði 'addaani la-9indak.[8]

Gaalib: maa bih?

Hajj 9ali: ya Sadiigi 'ams xuTiit min ʃaari9kum w-'inna l-xulab w-l-gamaagim w-ð-ðubaab w-bagaaya l'akl malyaan aʃ-ʃaari9 w-r-raa'iHa gad gadr gaama. ma billa ʃammayt ar-raa'iHa wala zid 9agal-li 'ayn aT-Tariig fa-TuHust w-9atawSat rijli w-ðalHiin gad-ða bayn a9kil.

Gaalib: ya 'asafaah! salaamatak! salaamatak! kulla fi ðimmat al-jiiraan. maa yi9mal al-waaHid ma9aahum?

Hajj 9ali: kayf maa yi9mal? 'ant saakin fi haaða ʃ-ʃaari9 w-ma9aak 'awlaad w-daari 'inna haaði l-'awsaax bi-tjallib 'amraaḍ kaθiira 9alaykum kullukum.

Gaalib: 'ii waLLaah ya 'axi. 'amaana 'in 9aad ana bayn atHayyar w-l-mare ðalHiin min 'ajl ma Hadaθ lana.

Hajj 9ali: maa Hadaθ lakum? ma gad ktasarʃ rijl waaHid min al-9iyaal?

Gaalib: maaʃi ya rajjaal! Salli 9ala rasuul illaah[9]!

Hajj 9ali: kaan maa huw?

Gaalib: 'ana bass 'agul-lak 9indima wuSult 'ila l-bayt w-'inna ra's al-mare bi-yuuja9ha w-ra'si bi-yuuja9ni w-ẓahri w-baTni w-bayn aʃki 9ala l-mare w-hiy kaðaalik bi- tiʃki 9alayya 'inna ra'saha bi-yuuja9ha w-waaHid min al-'awlaad baTna w-waaHid raagid.

Hajj 9ali: 'aah! raHam aLLaah waalidayk! hayya! 'isma9! gaduu ða 'ant w-zawjatak w-'awlaadak kullukum 'amraað?

Gaalib: 'ii na9am waLLaah!

Hajj 9ali: w-s-sabab fi ðaalik natiijat al-'awsaax al-mutaraakima. simi9t?

Gaalib: 'ii waLLaah huw haaða l-waagi9! laakin kayf a9mal w-kayf 'atafaaham ma9 al-jiiraan 9ala sibb yamtani9u min silkaab al-mee' w-l-'awsaax fi ʃ-ʃaari9?

Hajj 9ali: 'isma9! 'ant yajib 9alayk 'an tfahhim zawjatak w-tamna9ha w-tHaððir al-jiiraan w-tgaddim lahum an-naSaa'iH b-'anna haaði l-'awsaax xaTiira 9alaykum kullukum w-allaði ma 9a-yifhamʃ al-kalaam gaddim bih ʃakwa.

Gaalib: waLLaah gaduu haaða w-raḍiya-LLaah 9annak w-9afwan li-llaði Hadaθ.[10]

II. VOCABULARY

gaTab	(yagTub) to perform; to accomplish
'uff	interj. expressing anger or displeasure
nafax	(yanfux) to puff; to blow
wuja9	(yuuja9) to hurt, pain s.o.
9ilim	(ya9lam) to know, be cognizant of
jadd	('ajdaad) grandfather
9ajiib	adj. strange; odd
xabar	('axbaar) matter; news item

muntaʃir	(-iin) act. part. spreading. maraδ muntaʃir epidemic
'i9laan	(-aat) advertisement
SaHaafa	the press; journalism
dagg (9ala)	(ydugg) to knock at s.th.
'ayyan?	what?
Tala9	(yuTlu9) to come up (to a place)
luzuum	v.n. necessity
9akal	(ya9kil) to limp
xulab	mud
δubbi	(δibbaan, δubaab) fly
bagiyya	(bagaaya) remains, residue
raa'iHa	(rawaa'iH) smell; scent
gaama	(-aat) fathom = six feet
TuHus	(yaTHus) to fall down
9agal	(ya9gil) to realize, comprehend
ya 'asafaah!	Oh grief! unfortunately!
δimma	(δimam) responsibility; obligation. fi δimmat ... It's the responsibility of ...
jalab	(yajlib) to bring about; to cause
tHayyar	V to be perplexed
'ajl	cause, reason, sake. min 'ajl because of, for the sake of
Hadaθ	(yaHduθ) to take place, occur. syn. wuga9
ktasar	VIII to be broken
rasuul	(rusul) messenger; prophet
ʃaka 9ala	(yaʃki) to complain to s.o.
raHam	(yarHam) to have mercy on
sabab	('asbaab) reason, cause
natiija	(nataa'ij) result
mutaraakim	(-iin) act. part. piled up, accumulated
mtana9 (min)	VIII to refrain (from)
silkaab	v.n. spilling
fahham	II to make s.o. understand
Haδδar	II to warn
naSiiHa	(naṢaa'iH) advice

xaTiir (-iin) dangerous; serious
gaddam (b-) II to submit, e.g., a complaint against s.o.
raði (9an) (yarðа) to be pleased (with) s.o.
9afwan (l-) sorry (for) s.th.

III. NOTES

1 "What have I done?" This rhetorical question implies that she has done nothing, and her husband has come back.

2 salaam is short for 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

3 "Do we have any food?"

4 "What is the matter?" "What does all of this mean?"

5 "Wouldn't you say that there is an epidemic?"

6 kaan here means "then, therefore"; it is part of the result-clause. The if-clause is implied in what Gaalib said previously, i.e., if we haven't heard from the broadcasting station or the press that there is an epidemic, then what is it?

7 The honorific plural, 'inzilu is used instead of the singular 'inzil.

8 "This is what brought me to your home."

9 In other words say, "Salla LLaahu 9alayhi wa sallam", i.e., God bless him (Prophet Muhammad) and grant him salvation! It is a eulogy after the name of the Prophet Muhammad.

10 "Sorry for what has happened."

درس خمسة وستين

نظافة الشارع

المرة : من ؟

غالب : إفتحوا !

المرة : هيا يا فعلتي فعلة . هذا قد جو وانا ما قد قطبتش .

غالب : سلام يا مرة ! سلام !

المرة : وعليكم السلام .

غالب : آه ! أف ! قد شيء معانا أكل ؟

المرة : كل شيء موجود . وما لكم بتنفخوا ؟ ما قد به ؟

غالب : ما أدري . رأسي بيوجعني وظهري وبطني .

المرة : وأنا قد رأسي بيوجعني قوي من الصبح . الله بس يعلم ما هو هذا .

غالب : ما أدري ما هو . الجهّال أين هم ؟

المرة : محمد شلّيته لعند جدّته .

غالب : وللما شليتيه ؟

المرة : بس دخل من الشارع وإن قد بطنه بيوجعه . جلس يصيح . شليته لعند جدّته وعبد الله خرج يلعب وفاطمة راقدة .

غالب : عجيب ! عجيب ! محمد بيوجعه بطنه وفاطمة راقدة وأنا رأسي بيوجعني وأنت كذلك . كيف الخبر ؟ قد هو كلنا أمراض .

المرة : ما أدريش والله تقولوا ما قدبش مرض منتشر ؟

غالب : مابش مرض منتشر . مالو شيء إن قد سمعنا في الإعلانات يعني في الإذاعة والصحافة .

المرة : كان ما هو هذا ؟

(واحد يطقطق على الباب)

غالب : هيا ! إسمعي ! هذا من هو ؟ إسمعي الذي بدق على الباب . أبسري من هو . لو هو صاحب الفواكه ، قولي له مابش أحد .

المرة : أيّن فواكه ؟

غالب : أبسري بس !

الحج علي : الأخ غالب !

المرة : نعم ! نعم ! من بيدق على الباب ؟

الحج علي : أمانة لو هو الأخ غالب موجود قولي له ينزل لعندي .

المرة : من أنت ؟

الحج علي : قولي له الحج علي .

المرة : ناهي .

غالب : هيا ! من هو ؟

المرة : رجّال يقول إنه الحج علي .

غالب : الحج علي ما يشتي ؟

المرة : إنزلوا لعنده !

غالب : أهلا وسهلا يالحج علي !

الحج علي : الله يحيّيك !

غالب : هيّا ! تفضّل ! إطلع !

الحج علي : مابش لزوم ، مابش لزوم .

غالب : إطلع يا ذاك !

الحج علي : مابش لزوم يا أخي ؟ بس أنا أشتي أكلّمك وأروح لي .

غالب : هه ! هه ! سلامتك ! ما قد لك بتعكل ؟

الحج علي : هو هذا الذي أدراني لعندك .

غالب : مابه ؟

الحج علي : يا صديقي أمس خطيت من شارعكم وإنّه الخلب والقماقم والذباب وبقايا الأكل ملآن الشارع والرائحة قد قدر قامة . ما بلاّ شميت الرائحة ولا زد عقل لي عين الطريق فطحست رجلي وذالحين كذا بين أعكل .

غالب : يا أسفاه ! سلامتك ! سلامتك ! كلّه في ذمة الجيران . ما يعمل الواحد معاهم ؟

الحج علي : كيف ما يعمل ؟ أنت ساكن في هذا الشارع ومعاك أولاد وداري إنّه هذه الأوساخ بتجلّب أمراض كثيرة عليكم كلكم .

غالب : إي والله يا أخي . أمانة إن عاد أنا بين أتحيّر والمرة ذالحين من أجل ما

حدث لنا .

الحج علي : ما حدث لكم ؟ ما قد اكتسرش رجل واحد من العيال ؟

غالب : ماشي يا رجال صلي على رسول الله .

الحج علي : كان ما هو ؟

غالب : أنا بس أقل لك عندما وصلت الى البيت وإنّ رأس المرة بيوجعها ورأسي بيوجعني وظهري وبطني وبين أشكي على المرة . وهي كذلك بتشكي عليّ إنّ رأسها بيوجعها وواحد من الأولاد بطنه وواحد راقد .

الحج علي : آه ! رحم الله والديك ! هيا ! إسمع ! قد هو أنت وزوجتك وأولادك كلكم أمراض .

غالب : إي نعم والله .

الحج علي : والسبب في ذلك نتيجة الأوساخ المتراكمة . سمعت ؟

غالب : إي والله هو هذا الواقع ؟ لكن كيف أعمل وكيف أتفاهم مع الجيران على سبب يمتنعوا من سلكاب الماء والأوساخ في الشارع ؟

الحج علي : إسمع ! أنت يجب عليك أن تفهّم زوجتك وتمنعها ونحذّر الجيران وتقدّم لهم النصائح بأن هذه الأوساخ خطيرة عليكم كلكم والذي ما يفهمش الكلام قدّم به شكوى .

غالب : والله قد هو هذا ورضي الله عنك وعفوا للّذي حدث .

'aaxir ('awaaxir) the end, the last part of (with foll. def. n.); the last (with foll. indef. n.). 'aaxir as-sana the end, last part of the year. fi 'aaxir as-sab9iinaat during the last part of the seventies. 'aaxir sana the last year

'aaθar antiquities; ruins. daa'irat al-'aaθaar the department of antiquities

'ab/'abu ('aabaa') father

'absar (yibsir) to see; to watch

'abu ðabi Abu Dhabi

'abyaḍ (biiḍ) white f. bayḍaa'

'ab9ad IV to deport; to move away s.th.

'adda (l-) (y'addi) to give s.o. (s.th.)

'ad-dawHa Doha, capital city of Qatar

'ad-dinya the world, this world (as opposed to the world hereafter)

'adiib (-iin) = mu'addab well-mannered

'adran (durn) deaf f. darnaa'. syn. 'aSnaj

'adxal (yidxil) to let in, make or let s.o. enter

'agna9 IV to convince

'agḍa9 (guḍ9aan) bald-headed

'ahda IV to give s.th. as a present or gift

'ahl folks; family (m.p.). 'ahlan wa sahlan! welcome!

'ahli adj. domestic; native; national. Harb 'ahliyya civil war. 'al-bank al-'ahli The National Bank

'aHad someone; anyone. maabiʃ 'aHad. There isn't anyone.

'aHmar (Humr) red f. Hamraa'

'aHsan elat. adj. better; best

'ajl cause, reason, sake. min 'ajl because of, for the sake of

'ajnabi ('ajaanib) foreign; foreigner

'akal (ya'kul) to eat

'akiid adv. certainly

'akl v.n. eating. 'al-'akl w-ʃ-ʃurb eating and drinking; food. syn. Ta9aam

'akmal IV to complete, finish

'akθar (with foll. def. n.) most, most of the

'al-'aHad Sunday

'al-'aLmaaniyya The German Airline (Lufthansa)

'al-'aʃGaal the ministry of public works

'al-'ax ... (title) Brother ...

'al-'imaaraat The Emirates, the U.A.E.

'al-'islaam Islam, the religion of Islam

'al-'iθnayn Monday

'al-'urdun Jordan

'al-'iðaa9a the broadcasting station

'alam ('aalaam) pain, ache. syn. waja9 p. 'awjaa9

'al-baakistaan Pakistan

'al-baHr al-'aHmar The Red Sea

'al-baHrayn Bahrain

'al-ba9ḍ some (people, things, etc.)

'alf ('aalaaf) one thousand

'al-faatiHa the first sura of the Quran

'al-fajr dawn, morning, twilight. Salaat al-fajr the early morning prayer = Salaat aS-SubH

'al-faransiyya The French plane. Air France

'alfayn two thousand

'al-gaahira Cairo

'al-hind India

'al-HaaSil adv. in conclusion, consequently

'al-Hodayda Hudaida

'ali rel. pron. who, that, which. var. 'allaδi, 'alli

'al-jawaazaat the passports department

'al-jazaa'ir Algeria

'al-jum9a Friday

'al-kuwayt Kuwait

'alli rel. pron. who, that, which. var. 'allaδi, 'ali

'allaδi rel. pron. who, which, that. var. 'ali, 'alli

'al-maaliyya the ministry of finance

'al-maGrib Morocco

'al-maxa Mocha, city in the Y.A.R.

'altag (litgiin, lutg) stammerer f. latgee'

'al-waagi9 the real world; reality

'al-xamiis Thursday

'al-xariif autumn, fall

'al-xarTuum Khartoum

'al-yahwada v.n. Judaism; piety, religiousness

'al-yaman Yemen. 'al-yaman al-januubi South Yemen. 'al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali North Yemen

'al-yamaniyya Yamaniya, The Yemeni Airline

'al-yawm today. 'al-yawm al-masaa' tonight. 'al-yawm aS-SubH this morning. 'al-yawm aδ-δuhr today at noon

'al-9aalam the world

'al-9iraag Iraq

'aLLa God. var. 'aLLaah

'aLmaanya Germany. var. 'aLamaanya

'amaam adv.; prep. in front, in front of. var. guddaam

'amaan v.n. safety; security

'amaana v.n. reliability, trustworthiness. 'amaana gul lahum! Please tell them!

'amiir ('umaraa') Emir, prince

'amlak IV to contract a marriage

'amriiki (-yyiin) American; characteristic of America

'ams yesterday. 'ams al 9aʃi last night. 'ams aS-SubH yesterday morning

'amTaar rain. s. maTar

'amḍa IV to sign

'ana I. var. 'ane. p. 'iHna, Hna

'ant ('antu) you (m.s.)

'antayn you (f.p.)

'anti ('antayn) you (f.s.)

'antu you (m.p.)

'arbaʃ (yirbiʃ) to mix up s.o. or s.th.

'arba9a four. 'arba9at rijaal four men. 'arba9a 'alf four thousand

'arba9iin forty

'arba9miya four hundred

'arba9Ta9ʃ/-ar fourteen

'ar-rabaaT Rabat

'ar-rabii9 spring (season)

'ar-rabuu9 Wednesday

'ar-rawḍa Rawda, town in the Y.A.R.

'ar-riyaaḍ Riyadh

'arsal IV to send s.o. or s.th.

'arḍ ('araaḍi) floor of a room; dirt, earth

'asaf v.n. regret. li-l-'asaf, ma9 al-'asaf unfortunately, what a pity!

'asra9 ('ila) to hasten (to); to speed up. 'asra9 'ila l-9amal. He hastened to work.

'as-saa9a It is ... o'clock; at (the time of). var. saa9at ...

'as-sabt Saturday. 'as-sabt al-maaδi last Saturday

'assas II to establish, build

'as-suudaan The Sudan

'as-su9uudiyya Saudia (airline); Saudi Arabia

'aswad (suud) black f. sawdaa'

'aSbaH IV to become, come into being

'aSfar (Sufr) yellow f. Safraa'

'aSl ('uSuul) origin; source; descent

'aSlaH IV - II SallaH. to fix; to repair

'aSnaj (Sunj) deaf f. Sanjaa'. syn. 'adran

'aS-Sayf summer. 'aS-Sayf al-maaḍi last summer

'aS-SubH in the morning. var. 'aS-SabaaH. 'al-yawm aS-SubH this morning

'aʃaa9 IV to spread rumors

'aʃraf 9ala IV to supervise

'aʃraaf var. ʃurafaa', p. of ʃariif

'aʃ-ʃaariga Sharja

'aʃ-ʃitaa' winter (m.). faSl aʃ-ʃitaa' the winter season

'aʃti I want, would like to

'ata (ya'ti) intran. to come. syn. jaa' tran. to come to s.o.; to befall s.o. 'atathum ad-dawaahi. They were beset by calamities.

'at-taHriir Tahrir (Independence) Square, also known as maydaan at-taHriir

'aw conj. or. tiʃti haaða 'aw ðaak? Do you want this or that? syn. walla

'awwal (with foll. def. n.) the first part of. (with foll. indef. n.) the first. 'awwal ʃay' at first, the first thing

'ax/'axu- ('ixwa) brother

'axað (ya'xuð) to take

'axbar (9an) IV to inform s.o. (about)

'axlaag behavior, manners, moral conduct

'axraj IV to make s.o. go out; to dismiss

'axð v.n. taking. 'al-'axð b-l-guwwa taking s.th. by force

'axḍar (xuḍr) green f. xaḍraa'

'ayn? where?

'ayʃ? what? syn. maa?

'aywa yes. syn. na9am, 'ii

'ayy which? what? any. 'ayy waaHid? ma 'aʃtiiʃ 'ayy ʃay'. I do not want anything.

'ayyan what?

'azrag (zurg) blue f. zargaa'

'aθari adj. archaeological. 'amaakin 'aθariyya archaeological sites.

'aθ-θaluuθ Tuesday. 'al-yawm aθ-θaluuθ. Today is Tuesday. yawm aθ-θaluuθ on Tuesday

'aðaan call for prayer

'aðaa9 IV to broadcast

'aðiyya v.n. harm; trouble

'aððan II to call for prayer

'a9jam (9ijmaan) dumb, mute f. 9ajmaa'

'a9lam IV to inform, tell s.o.

'a9raj (9urj) lame person f. 9arjee'

'a9war (9uuraan) one-eyed f. 9awraa'

'ibb Ibb, city in the Y.A.R.

'ibliis Satan; devil

'ibn ('abnaa') son; son of. 'ibn 9amm p. 'abnaa' 9amm cousin (m.), son of one's paternal uncle. 'ibn xaal 'abnaa' xaal son of one's maternal uncle

'ibra ('ibar) needle, sewing needle

'ibtidaa'i (-yyiin) elementary, primary

'idaara (-aat) office, bureau. 'idaarat al-muruur the traffic bureau. v.n. administration. 'idaarat 'a9maal business administration.

'ifranji (-yyiin) Western, European

'igtiSaad v.n. economy; economics

'igtiSaadi (-yyiin) economical, economic

'iglaa9 v.n. departure (of a plane), taking off

'iih! interj. (expression of pain)

'ihtimaam v.n. concern; importance

'iHna we. var. Hna

'iHtifaal v.n. celebrating. (-aat) celebration

'iHtilaal v.n. occupation (by armed forces

'iHtiraag v.n. combustion; burning

'ii yes. syn. na9am. 'ii waLLaah! Indeed!

'iijaar rent; rent money. la l-'iijaar for rent. kam al-'iijaar? How much is the rent?

'iiraan Persia, Iran

'iiTaalya Italy

'ijaaza (-aat) leave, vacation

'ijtimaa9 (-aat) meeting

'ikmaal v.n. completion

'ila prep. to, until. var. la-

'illa to (e.g., quarter to five); except

'iltibaaj v.n. hitting oneself or each other

'imaam ('a'imma) prayer leader

'imsaak v.n. constipation. opp.'ishaal

'imtidaad v.n. stretching, extension

'imtiHaan (-aat) examination; test. gaddam 'imtiHaan to sit for an examination. najaH fi l-'imtiHaan. He passed the examination.

'ingliizi adj. English; Englishman. p. 'ingliiz

'ingiltara England

'inna conj. that. 9irift 'innahum ... I knew that they ...

'insaan (no p.) person, human being. 'al-'insaan man, human beings, people

'insiHaab v.n. withdrawal (of troops)

'intixaab v.n. election; selection. -aat elections

'irsaal v.n. act of sending s.o. or s.th.

'irtiyaaH v.n. state of being comfortable or at ease

'ishaal v.n. diarrhea. opp. 'imsaak

'islaami adj. Islamic (with foll. non-human n.). 'aʃ-ʃarii9a l-'islaamiyya the Sharia, Islamic law

'ism ('asmaa') name

'istigbaal v.n. receiving, welcoming s.o.

'istihlaaki adj. consumer- (goods, prices, etc.) jam9iyya 'istihlaakiyya cooperative that deals with pricing and the consumption of goods

'istiHgaag v.n. deservingness, worthiness

'istigaala v.n. resignation. syn. tafliit

'istikbaar v.n. considering oneself big; swelling up with pride

'istimraar v.n. continuing, continuation

'isti9aana v.n. help, assistance

'isti9daad v.n. getting ready. p. -aat preparations

'isti9maal v.n. utilization. p. -aat uses

'iʃaa9a (-aat) rumor

'iʃtiraak v.n. subscription; participation

'itriik (-aat) kerosene lantern

'ittifaag v.n. agreeing; agreement

'ittiHaad v.n. union; unity

'ixtifaa' v.n. disappearance

'ixtilaaf v.n. difference, state of being different

'izaar (mayaazir) waist-wrapper

'iθnayn two f. θintayn

'iθna9ʃ/-ar twelve

'iδa conj. if. syn. law, laa

'iδaa9a v.n. broadcasting. -aat broadcasting stations. 'al-'iδaa9a the broadcasting station

'iδan conj. then, therefore

'iðn ('aaðaan) ear

'iḍaafi adj. additional, extra

'i9daadi adj. preparatory. madrasa 'i9daadiyya preparatory (junior high) school

'i9jaab v.n. pleasing

'i9jab IV to please s.o. 'i9jabni l-jaww. I liked the weather.

'i9laan (-aat) advertisement

'osTa ('asaaTi) skillful builder, mason

'uff interj. expressing anger or displeasure

'umm ('ummahaat) mother

'unθa ('inaaθ) female

'usbuu9 ('asaabii9) week. 'al-'usbuu9 al-maaḍi last week

'uSbu9 ('aSaabi9) finger. 'uSbu9 rijl toe

'usra ('usar) family, household

'uubah (yuubih) to look after s.o.

'uxt ('axawaat) sister

b

b-Hasb prep. according to. var. Hasb

b-jamb prep. beside, next to

b-kam? for how much?

b-l-baaS by bus

b-l-baHr by sea

b-n-nisba 'ila as for, with regard to

b-nafsa by himself. b-nafsi by myself

b-r-rijl on foot

b-sàa9a (with foll. suff. pron.) right away, immediately. sirt b-saa9ati. I went right away.

b-s-sayyaara by car

b-t-tammaam w-l-kamaal adv. precisely

b-T-Tayyaara by plane. var. b-T-Taa'ira

b-xàyr adv. fine, in good health

b-9iʃriin for twenty

baab ('abwaab) gate, doorway, door

baadiya (bawaadi) farmland; plantation

baagi n. remainder; change. act. part. remaining, leftover

baal (yibuul) to urinate

baamya coll. okra. unit Habbat baamya

baan (yibaan) to appear, seem

baarak fi III to bless s.o.

baardi (-yaat, bawaarid) metal or plastic water bucket

baarid n. something cold, beverage. adj. cold. elat. 'abrad

baariis Paris

baaS (-aat) bus. b-l-baaS by bus

baaʃar III to attend to; to apply oneself

baazi (-yyiin) babysitter. f. baaziya p. -aat

baaðinjaan coll. eggplant. unit baaðinjaana

baa9 (ybii9) to sell

bada' (yabda') to begin, start. (with foll. imperf.) to begin to do s.th. bada' yudrus. He began to study.

badal-ma (with foll. v.) instead of, in lieu of

baddal II to change; to exchange

bagar coll. cows. unit bagara

bagari coll. beef

bagiyya (bagaaya) remains, residue

baGdaad Baghdad

baGl (biGaal) mule

baHr (biHaar) sea

bakkar II to go early in the morning

bakka9 II to lacerate, rend lightly

balaaʃ gratis, free of charge

balad (bilaad) country, town, city (m. or f.)

balas coll. cactus fruit. unit balasa. balas 9arabi coll. figs. unit Habbat balas 9arabi

balbal (ybalbil) to cause confusion or anxiety

ball (ybill) to make wet, moisten

bana (yabni) to build

bank (bunuuk) bank. bank ad-damm the blood bank

banTaloon (-aat) trousers, pants

baraka (-aat) blessing; benediction. 9ala barakat illaah with God's blessing

barbar coll. billy goats. unit barbari

bard v.n. cold weather. 'al-yawm bard gawi. It's very cold today

bardag (baraadig) glass (of s.th.); cup

bargiyya (-aat) telegram, cable

barguug coll. apricots. unit barguuga

bariid mail, letters (m.s.)

bariiTaani (-yyiin) British, characteristic of Britain

bariiTaaniya Britain

barr land, as opp. to baHr sea

bar9a (-aat) dance tune. ḍarab bar9a. He played a dance tune.

bass but; only

baSal coll. green onions. unit buSli

baʃmag (baʃaamig) pair of shoes

batrool gasoline; petroleum. wazaarat al-batrool The ministry of petroleum

baTaarya (-aat) battery

baTn (buTuun) belly, stomach

baTTa (-aat) deck of playing cards

baTTaaniya (-aat) blanket

baTTiix coll. cantaloupes, muskmelons. unit baTTiixa

baxiil (buxalaa') greedy, stingy

baxʃaʃ (ybaxʃiʃ) to tip s.o.; to bribe

baxʃaʃa v.n. tipping; bribery

baxxar II to perfume s.th. with incense

baynama conj. while, whereas; but

bayrag (bayaarig) flag; banner

bayruut Beirut

bayn prep. between, among; conj. while. bayn ana 'atHaaka ma9aahum While I was talking with them

bayt (buyuut) house, home

bayyaa9 (-iin) seller, vendor. bayyaa9-miʃtari dealer; shopkeeper

bayḍ coll. eggs. umit bayḍa

bayḍaa' (biiḍ) white (f.) m. 'abyaḍ

bay9 v.n. selling. opp. ʃiraa'. 'al-bay9 w-ʃ-ʃiraa' buying and selling

ba9d prep. after. ba9d aḍ-ḍuhr in the afternoon

ba9da later on; also, too

ba9dima conj. after

ba9iid (-iin) far; far away

ba9ḍ (with foll. def. n.) some of the

bi'r ('abyaar) well. var. biir

bidaaya v.n. beginning, start. fi l-bidaaya at the beginning. opp. nihaaya

bigi (yibga) to stay, remain. bigiit yawmayn. I stayed for two days. (with foll. imperf.) to continue to do s.th.

bih there is; there are. kaan bih there was; there were. maabihʃ = maabiʃ there isn't; there weren't

bihaar coll. spices

biibar coll. bell peppers. unit biibari

biima (biyam) warranty; insurance. syn. sikortaah

biira beer. gaaruurat biira bottle of beer

bilaad (buldaan) country (f.)

bilayzig (-aat) bracelet. syn. siwaara p. -aat

bin ('abnaa') the son of; son

binaa' v.n. building, construction

binaaya (-aat) building. syn. 9imaara p. -aat

bint (banaat) daughter; girl. bint xaal cousin (f.), daughter of one's maternal uncle. bint 9amm cousin (f.), daughter of one's paternal uncle

bir9i coll. split peas; lentils

bisbaas coll. hot peppers. unit bisbaasi

biTaaga (-aat, baTaa'ig) identity card; card; ticket. biTaagat xuruuj boarding pass. biTaagat siinama cinema ticket

bluuz (-aat) blouse

btall VIII to wet oneself

btara9 VIII to dance

bugʃa (bugaʃ) small unit of money = ¼ of a riyal; bag of money; purse

bukaa' v.n. crying, weeping

bunn Yemeni coffee

bunni (-yyiin) brown f. bunniyya

burayk pastry made of wheat flour, mixed with eggs and sugar

burtagaal coll. oranges. unit burtagaala

burtagaali (-yyiin) adj. orange f. burtagaaliyya

buruuda v.n. coldness, coolness. opp. Haraara

bustaan (basaatiin) backyard; garden; orchard

buSSaala coll. (brown) onions. unit ra's buSSaala

buTaaT coll. potatoes. unit buTaaTa

buTTaal v.n. nullification

buuri (bawaari) horn; trumpet

buxl v.n. greed; stinginess

d

daa'iman adv. always

daa'ira (dawaa'ir) department; circle, roundabout

daahiya (dawaahi) calamity, misfortune. adj. smart, intelligent person

daar (duur) house, home; building. daar al-mu9allimaat the women's teacher training college

daari (-yiin) act. part. having known; aware of s.th.

daawam III to go to work, report for duty

daaxil adv.; prep. inside

dafa9 (yidfa9) to pay

daftar (dafaatir) notebook, copybook

daf9 v.n. paying

daf9a (-aat) instance n.; installment; a push

dagg 9ala (ydugg) to knock at s.th.

dagdag (ydagdig) to beat s.th. repeatedly; to knock at the door

dagdaga v.n. beating s.th. repeatedly; knocking at the door

dagg (ydugg) to beat s.th.; to knock at s.th. intran. to ring, e.g., the phone

dagga chopped up beef stew

dagiig coll. all kinds of ground cereals (generic description)

dagiiga (dagaa'ig) minute; moment

dahliiz (dahaaliiz) hallway, corridor

dajaaj coll. chickens; chicken. unit dajaaja

dajla (-aat) overcoat

daktoor (dakaatira) doctor. daktoor 9uyuun eye doctor. daktoor 'asnaan dentist

dala dala adv. slowly. syn. ʃwayya ʃwayya. opp. fiisa9

dallaal (-iin) auctioneer; street crier

dalw (dlaaw) rubber bucket, pail

damm blood. bank ad-damm the blood bank

dara b- (yidri) to know; to be aware of

daraahim = fuluus, zalaT money

daraj (dirjaan) stairway step

daraja (-aat) degree (of temperature). darajat al-Haraara the temperature

daras (yudrus) to study

darras II to teach

dars (duruus) lesson

darzan (daraazin) dozen. darzan bayḍ a dozen eggs

dawaa' ('adwiya) medicine. syn. 9ilaaj

dawaam v.n. work schedule; reporting for duty. 'ad-dawaam min as-saa9a tisi9 'ila s-saa9a xams. The work schedule is from nine to five.

dawla (duwal) state; country; government

dawwar 9ala II to look for s.o. or s.th. syn. baHaθ 9an

daxal (yudxul) to enter

daxl income. ðariibat ad-daxl income tax

daxxal II to let in, bring in s.th. or s.o.

dayma (diyam) kitchen, old Yemeni kitchen

da9a (yid9i) to call, send for s.o.

dda9a VIII to feign, pretend

dihn coll. shortening

diik ('adyaak) rooster

diimograaTi (-yyiin) democratic

diimograaTiyya v.n. democracy

diin ('adyaan) religion, faith

diinaar (danaaniir) dinar

diiwaan (dawaawiin) living room

dikkaan (dakaakiin) shop, store. syn. Haanuut p. Hawaaniit

dima∫g Damascus

dimm (dimam) cat (m.)

diraasa (-aat) study, studies. v.n. study, studying

dubayy Dubai

dubbe coll. zucchini. unit dubbaaya

duulaab (dawaaliib) wardrobe; cupboard

duulaar (-aat) dollar

duxuul v.n. entrance; admission. biTaagat duxuul admission card. first coiton in marriage, as in laylat ad-duxuul

f

fa conj. and. syn. wa, w-

fa'r (fiiraan) mouse; rate

fa's (fiisaan) ax, hatchet

faad (yifiid) to benefit, be of use to s.o.

faakiha (fawaakih) fruit

faaniila (-aat) undershirt, T-shirt

faariH (-iin) happy, cheerful

faarisi (furs) Persian, characteristic of Persia. f. -yya

faarix (fawaarix) coffee pot

faaSuulya coll. beans. unit Habbat faaSuulya

faatuura (fawaatiir) bill, invoice

faaḍi (-yiin) empty; vacant; not busy. f. faaḍiya

fagad (yafgid) to miss s.o. or s.th., yearn for s.th.

fagiih (fugahaa') learned man, esp. one well-versed in jursiprudence

fagiir (-iin, fugaraa') poor. elat. 'afgar

fagr damm anaemia

fahham II to make s.o. understand

falat (yiflit) be released; to get away

fallat II to leave, abandon; to resign

fam ('afmaam) mouth

faransa France

farg (furuug) difference. maabi∫ farg. There is no difference.

farmala (faraamil) car clutch

farraan (-iin) baker. syn. xabbaaz p. -iin

farḍ (furuuḍ) religious duty or command

faSl (fuSuul) season

fataH (yaftaH) to open

fatH v.n. opening; conquering (a city)

fatHa (-aat) instance n. an opening

fatiila (-aat) lantern

fatra (-aat) period of time. syn. mudda

fawg adv. upstairs; prep. above, over

faxð ('afxaað) thigh

fa9al (yaf9al) to do; to act. fa9al b- to do s.th. to s.o.

fi prep. in, inside

fiisa9 adv. fast, quickly

film ('aflaam) film, movie

finjaan (fanaajiin) cup; cup of s.th. finjaan gahwa cup of coffee, coffee cup

firaaʃ bed; bedding

fi9la (-aat) instance n. act, deed, action

ftaja9 VIII to be afraid of

ftʃee' money given by a bridegroom to his bride on the wedding night

fulaan Mr. so-and-so

fuluus money (f.s.). syn. zalaT

fundug (fanaadig) hotel. syn. 'uteel p. -aat

furn ('afraan) oven; stove

fustaan (fasaatiin) dress, woman's dress

fuuTa (fuwaT) towel

g

gaabal III to meet; to have an interview with s.o.

gaal (yguul) to say. gaal l- to tell, inform s.o.

gaam (yguum) (with foll. imperf.) to start, begin to do s.th. gaam yudrus. He started to study. gaam b- to undertake; to perform, do s.th.

gaama (-aat) statue; length, tallness. Tawiil al-gaama tall of stature; fathom = six feet

gaani9 (min) (-iin) fed up (with), tired (of)

gaanuun (gawaaniin) law; canon; statute

gaaruura (gawaariir) bottle; bottle of s.th.

gaat coll. qat. unit 9irg gaat or 9uudi gaat

gaatal III to quarrel with s.o., engage s.o. in a quarrel

gaayas III to measure

gaaḍi (guḍaa) cadi, Islamic judge

gaa9 (gii9aan) quarter, section of a city. gaa9 al-yahuud the Jewish quarter; floor of a room

gaa9 (yguu9) to become, turn out to be

gabaS (yagbuS) to pinch

gabiiH (-iin) ugly. opp. Haali. elat. 'agbaH

gabiili (gabaa'il) peasant; uncouth, ill-mannered person

gabiila (gabul) tribe

gabil (yigbal) to accept. var. gabul

gabl prep. before

gabl-an conj. before. syn. gablima

gablima conj. before

gabSa (-aat) n. of instance a pinch

gaddam II to present, submit. gaddam Talab. He submitted an application.

gaddam (b-) II to submit, e.g., a complaint (against) s.o.

gaddar II to appreciate, esteem highly

gadiim (gidaam) old, not new. elat. 'agdam

gadr v.n. extent, scope. 9ala gadr in proportion to, according to

gafaS (gifaaS) package, e.g., gafaS ʃigaayir package of cigarettes

gafuu9 coll. bread made from corn and lentils. unit gafuu9a

gahwa (ygahwi) to give coffee to s.o., welcome s.o. with coffee

gahwa coffee

gala (yigli) to fry s.th.

galab (yaglib) to turn s.th. upside down

galam ('aglaam) pen, pencil

galaS (-aat) glass of s.th.; drinking glass (f.)

galb (guluub) heart. ḍa9iif al-galb fainthearted

gallad II to take control over. galladiʃ aLLaah! God's curse be upon you! Damn you!

galoon (-aat) gallon

gambar (ygambir) to sit down, be seated

gambara v.n. sitting down

gamba9 (ygambi9) to jump up and down out of joy; to walk arrogantly

gamba9a v.n. jump for joy; walking arrogantly

gana9 b- (yigna9) to be satisfied with

gandiil (ganaadiil) light bulb

gara' (yigra') to read

garguuʃ (garaagiiʃ) cap worn by children in winter; scarf

gariib ('agaarib) relative , relation . adj. p. -iin close, nearby. elat. 'agrab. gariib min close to near

garrab II to give; to offer. syn. gaddam. garrabat lana S-SabuuH. She gave us breakfast.

garraH II to set off a firecracker

garrar II to decide. (with foll. imperf.) to decide to do s.th.

gaSab coll. stalks of cereal grasses. unit gaSaba. gaSabat al-madaa9a the pipe or hose of a water-pipe

gaSad (yigSid) to intend, have in mind

gaSdiir coll. aluminum

gaSgaS (ygaSgiS) to cut up s.th.

gaSgaSa v.n. act of cutting up s.th.

gaSiir (giSaar) short, not long. elat. 'agSar

gaS9a (giSa9) small can. gaS9at Tamaa-Tiis tomato can

gatal (yagtul) to kill s.o.

gatl v.n. killing; assassination

gaTaa'if also known as kunaafa, vermicelli baked in sugar, butter, and honey

gaTar Qatar

gaTa9 (yagTa9) to cut, cut off s.th.

gaT9 v.n. cutting off s.th. gaT9 taδaakir buying, selling tickets

gawwam II to wake up s.o.

gawi (-yyiin) strong, powerful. elat. 'agwa

gawl ('agwaal) saying; proverb

gawzab (ygawzib) to be seated in a submissive manner

gawzaba v.n. act of being seated in a submissive manner

gaδaf (yagδif) to throw up, vomit

gaḍiyya (gaḍaaya) problem, case

gayyal II to relax, chatter and chew qat

gibil (yigbal) to accept

gidir (yigdar) to be able to do s.th.

giima v.n. value; worth, cost

giraa'a v.n. reading. 'al-giraa'a w-l-kitaaba reading and writing

girriiH coll. firecrackers. unit girriiHa

gisma v.n. allotment, apportionment

gism ('agsaam) section, part

giʃr skin (e.g., of coffee beans. gahwat giʃr Yemeni coffee; coll. bark. unit giʃra

gtana9 VIII to be convinced

gubaal prep. in front of; face to face

gubba (gubab) dome

gubba9a (-aat) hat , Western hat. syn. Tarbuuʃ p. Taraabiiʃ

guddaam prep. in front of. adv. in front, toward. var. 'amaam

gumaaʃ coll. furniture

gumgumi (gamaagim) can, e.g., can of motor oil

gummal coll. fleas. unit gummali

gundara (ganaadir) pair of shoes

gunSuliyya (-aat) consulate

gurT ('agraaT) earring

guuzi boiled or roasted lamb

guwwa v.n. force; power, strength. p. -aat armed forces

gu9uud v.n. sitting down. syn. juluus

G

Gaali (-yiin) expensive. elat. 'aGla

GaaliT (-iin) mistaken, having made a mistake

Gaarig (-iin) act. part. furious

Gaayib (-iin) act. part. absent. opp. Haaḍir p. -iin

Gabi ('aGbiyaa') stupid, foolish. elat. 'aGba

Gadaa' (-aat) lunch

GaHba (GiHaab) prostitute, whore

Gala (yiGli) to boil s.th.

GalaT incorrect, wrong

Galiiḍ (-iin) dense; thick

Gallag II to shut, close

GalTa (-aat) instance n. a mistake

Ganam coll. sheep. unit Ganama

Ganami mutton; lamb (meat)

Gani (-yyiin, 'aGniyaa') rich. elat. 'aGna

Ganna II to sing. Ganna fi to sing the praises of s.o.

Garaf (yaGruf) to ladle, e.g., water from a basin

Garb west, western part (of). 'al-Garb the West

Gariim (-iin, Guramaa') litigant, debtor

Gasal (yiGsil) to wash

Gassaala (-aat) washing machine; laundromat

Gasl v.n. washing. Gasl aS-SuHuun doing the dishes

Gayb v.n. that which is hidden, concealed. 'aLLaah ya9lam ma fi l-Gayb. God knows what is hidden.

Gayr neg. part. (with foll. n.) other than; different from. (with foll. adj.) not, un-

Gazaal (Gizlaan) gazelle; deer

Gaθy v.n. apprehension, concern

Gaθθ (yGiθθ) to cause to vomit; to irritate

Giraara (-aat) bag, sack

Girig (yiGrag) to drown; to sink

Gissaala v.n. act of washing

Graam (-aat) gram

Gudwa tomorrow. Gudwa S-SubH tomorrow morning. Gudwa l-9aʃi tomorrow night

Gurfa (Guraf) room. syn. makaan p. -aat

Gurraab coll. ravens. unit Gurraabi

h

haakaða adv. in this manner, this way

haat! Give! Bring! (m.s.)

haaða this (m.) p. haaðawlaa' (m. or f.)

haaðawlaa' these (m. or f.)

haaðawlaak those (m. or f.) s. haðaak (m.), haðiik (f.)

haaði dem. pron. this (f.) var. haaðih. p. haaðawlaa'

haaðih dem. pron. this (f.) syn. haaði. p. haaðawlaa'

haddar II to demolish, destroy

hadiyya (hadaaya) gift; present

haluw! Hello!

hamm (yhimm) to be of importance to s.o. yhimmini 'inni ... It's important to me that ... ma yhimmakʃ! Don't worry!

handasa engineering; geometry

harab (min) (yahrub) to run away (from) s.o. or s.th.

hayya interj. hey! imperat. Come! Come here! hayya ma gult? Hey, what do think?

haδaak that; that one. p. haaδawlaak

haδiik that; that one (f.) p. haaδawlaak

hidaar v.n. chatter, prattle

hindi (hunuud) Indian; characteristic of India

hiy she. p. hin

hownaak adv. there, over there

htamm (b-) VIII to be concerned (with) s.o. or s.th.

hum they (m.). s. huw

humm v.n. sorrow; anxiety

huw he. p. hum

H

Haadiθ (Hawaadiθ) accident; event. Haadiθ sayyaara car accident

Haafaḍ 9ala III to maintain, safeguard s.th.

Haaja (-aat) need; necessity. b-Haaja 'ila in need of. wagt al-Haaja the time of need

Haaka III to talk with s.o., engage s.o. in conversation

Haal ('aHwaal) condition. kayf Haalak? How are you?

Haala (-aat, 'aHwaal) condition, state. syn. Haal

Haali (-yiin) beautiful; nice. f. Haaliya. elat. 'aHla

Haami adj. hot (weather). elat. 'aHma

Haamil (-iin) act. part. carrying

Haamuḍ (-iin) sour; acid

Haanig (-iin) mad; angry

Haanuut (Hawaaniit) shop, store. syn. dikkaan p. dakaakiin

Haara (-aat) neighborhood, quarter, section (of a city)

Haaris (Hurraas) guard

Haarr adj. hot. elat. 'aHarr

Haasab III to call to account; to settle an account with s.o.

HaaSil act. part. found; on hand. kamma bih al-HaaSil whatever is found

Haawal III to try, make an effort to do s.th

Haaḍir (-iin) act. part. present; attending. 'al-wagt al-Haaḍir the present time

Habb (yHibb) to kiss s.o.; to love s.o.

Habb coll. general term for grain, such as wheat, corn, etc. unit Habba

Habba (-aat) grain; seed; one unit of. Habbat rizz grain of rice. Habbat buTaaT a potatoe

Habbab II to kiss s.o. vehemently

HabHab coll. watermelons. unit HabHaba

Hadaθ (yaHduθ) to take place, occur. syn. wuga9

Haddaad (-iin) blacksmith

Haddad II to set, schedule; to define. Haddad maw9id. He made an appointment.

Hadiiga (Hadaa'ig) garden. Hadiiga 9aamma public garden

Hafla (-aat) party; ceremony; celebration. Haflat 9aʃaa' dinner party

Hagg prep. belonging to; for. 'as-sayyaara Haggi. The car belongs to me; my car.

Hajar coll. rock, stone. unit Hajara. p. Hijaar

Hajj (Hujjaaj) pilgrim; title of respect

Hajja Hajja, city in the Y.A.R.

Hakiim (Hukamaa') medical doctor. syn. Tabiib p. 'aTibbaa'

Halaawa dessert, s.th. sweet

Halab (yuHlub) to milk. Halab al-bagara. He milked the cow.

Halaf 9ala (yaHlif) to invite s.o., e.g., to dinner

Halag (yaHlug) to cut hair, have a haircut; to shave. Halagt. I had a haircut. Halag δagna. He shaved (his beard).

Halawiyyaat sweets; sweet pastry; candies

Haliib milk. galaS Haliib glass of milk

Hall (yHill) to solve, e.g., a problem

Hallaag (-iin) barber. syn. muzayyin p. -iin

Hama (yiHmi) to protect

Hamaam coll. pigeons; doves. unit Hamaami

Hama v.n. hot weather. 'al-yawm Hama. It's hot today.

Hamal (yaHmil) to carry s.th. Hamal nafsa. He went right away. 'iHmil nafsak! Go (m.s.) right away!

Hamd v.n. praise (m.). 'al-Hamdu lillaah! Praise be to God!

Hammaal (-iin) porter, carrier

Hammaam (-aat) public bath; bathroom

Hammaami (-yiin) public bath attendant or worker

Hamraa' (Humr) red (f.) m. 'aHmar

Hanafiyya (-aat) faucet

Hanag (yaHnug) to get mad or angry

Hanaʃ (HinʃaanHinʃaan) snake

Hann 9ala (yHinn) to feel affection for s.o.; to sympathize with s.o.

Haraara v.n. temperature; heat

Haraaz town in the Y.A.R., famous for making saraawiil

Haraazi (-yyiin) of or characteristic of Haraaz

Harag (yaHrig) to burn s.th.

Harb (Huruub) war (f.)

Haḍḍar II to warn

Hareew (Haraawa) bridegroom. syn. 9aruus

Hareewa (-aat) bride. syn. 9aruusa

Harrag II to burn s.th.

Hasb prep. according to

Hass (yHiss) to feel s.th., be aware of s.o. or s.th.

Hassan II to improve; to cut hair; to have a haircut

HaSal (yaHSul) to take place, occur

HaSal 9ala (yuHSul) to obtain, get s.th.

HaSSal (yHaSSil) to get, obtain s.th.

HaTab coll. wood. unit HaTaba

HaTT (yHuTT) to put, place s.th.

Hawl v.n. might, power. syn. guwwa. la Hawla wala guwwata 'illa billaah! There is no power and there is no strength except in God!

Hawl prep. around, round

Hawḍ ('aHwaaḍ) water basin, trough

Hayawaan (-aat) animal

Hayya II to welcome s.o.; to greet s.o. Hayyaak aLLaah! May God preserve your life!

Hayaa' v.n. shyness; shame. galiil al-Hayaa' shameless, impudent

Haḍar (yuHḍur) to come; to attend

Haḍḍar II = sabbar to prepare, get s.th. ready

Hda9ʃ/-ar eleven

Hiin ('aHyaan) time. f-ayy Hiin? When? At what time? zaaratHiin sometimes

Hiin conj. when, at the time when. syn. lamman, 9indima

Hijja (Hijaj) pretext; excuse

Hijra (-aat) anteroom

Hilaaga v.n. act of cutting hair

Hilba coll. fenugreek

Hilm ('aHlaam) dream, vision

Hilw (-iin) beautiful; sweet. elat. 'aHla

Hilya jewelry

Himaar (Hamiir) donkey, ass

Himyari (-yyiin) Himyarite

Hinna coll. henna

Hisaab (-aat) bill; (bank) account. 9ala Hisaab at the expense of; arithmetic

HiSaan ('aHSuna) horse. f. faras

Hizwiya (Hazaawi) anecdote; fairy tale

Hiδa ('aHδi) pair of slippers. syn. ʃibʃib p. ʃabaaʃib

Hodayda Hudaida

Htaaj VIII to need, be in need of

Htafal b- VIII to celebrate s.th.

Htall VIII to occupy (a country)

Htarag (yiHtarig) to be burned

HubuuT v.n. descent. opp. Su9uud

Huduud border (of a country), borderline

Hukm v.n. rule, ruling. niδaam al-Hukm the system of government

Hukuuma (-aat) government

Humayʃ (-iin) aggressive, assertive; feisty

Humma fever, high temperature

HummoS dish made of crushed chick peas, sesame seed paste, and lemon juice

Hurma (Hariim) woman. syn. mara, mare p. nisaa'

Huut coll. fish. unit Huuti

Huδ̣uur v.n. coming; attendance

j

jaa' (yjii') to come. jaa' l- to come for s.th.

jaab (yjiib) to bring

jaahil (jahhaal) child; adj. very young; ignorant. elat. 'ajhal

jaami9 (jawaami9) mosque, big, central mosque, such as 'al-jaami9 al-kabiir the Grand Mosque in Sanaa

jaami9a (-aat) university

jaar (jiiraan) neighbor

jaasuus (jawaasiis) spy

jaawab III to answer (e.g., a letter, a question, the phone, etc.)

jaawi9 (-iin) hungry

jabal (jibaal) mountain

jabali adj. mountainous; rocky

jadd ('ajdaad) grandfather

jadda Jadda

jaddad II to renew; to renovate

jadiid (jidaad) new. elat. 'ajdad

jahhaz II to provide, furnish; to prepare

jalab (yajlib) to bring about; to cause

jalas (yajlis) to sit down. syn. ga9ad

jallaab (-iin) importer (of goods)

jamaa9a (-aat) relatives, kinsfolk; group of people (m.p.)

jamal (jimaal) camel

jamana (jimiin) pitcher made of pottery

jambiya (janaabi) dagger, usually curved

jamiil (-iin) beautiful; handsome. syn. Haali

jam9iyya (-aat) association; corporation

janaaza (-aat) funeral ceremony

janna (-aat) paradise

jannan II to infuriate, drive s.o. insane

januub south (of), southern part (of). januub Garb southwest (of). januub ʃarg southeast (of)

jara (yajri) to take place, happen; to run

jaraad coll. grasshoppers; locusts. unit jaraada

jariida (jaraa'id) newspaper

jarr (yjurr) to receive, collect. jarr al-murattab. He collected his salary; to pull, drag; to withdraw, e.g., money from a bank

jarrab II to try s.th.; to test s.th.

jaʃa9 v.n. greed

jaʃi9 (-iin) greedy; covetous

jawaab (-aat) answer; response

jawaaz (-aat) passport. 'al-jawaazaat The passports department

jaww weather. 'al-jaww miGbir al-yawm. The weather is dusty today.

jayb (juyuub) pocket

jayʃ (juyuuʃ) army; (the) military (m.s.)

jayya (-aat) instance n. a manner of coming

jaza9 (9ala) (yijza9) to pass, go unnoticed by s.o. ma tijza9ʃ 9alayya Hijjatak. Your excuse will not go unnoticed by me.

jazzaar (-iin) butcher

ja9al b- (yij9al) to get; to have

jiha (-aat) authority, administrative agency. 'al-jihaat al-mas'uula the responsible authorities

jiifa v.n. stinking smell

jiizaan Jizan, city in Saudi Arabia, also known as a district

jimaa9 v.n. sexual intercourse

jinn coll. jinn, demons. unit jinni. f. jinniyya

jinsiyya (-aat) nationality; citizenship

jirba (jirab) piece of land, lot

jism ('ajsaam) body of a human being or animal

jizar coll. carrots. unit jizara

jtama9 VIII to have a meeting

jubaa' ('ajbiya) ceiling; roof

jubn coll. cheese. unit jubna

juluus v.n. sitting down. syn. gu9uud

jumhuuri adj. (-yyiin) republican

jumhuuriyya (-aat) republic. 'al-jumhuuriyya l-9arabiyya l-yamaniyya The Yemen Arabic Republic

jumruk (jamaarik) customs, duty

juux coll. broadcloth

juu9 v.n. hunger. opp. ʃiba9

k

kaad (ykiid) to deceive, dupe s.o.

kaafi coffee, Western coffee

kaamil (-iin) perfect; complete, full

kaan (ykuun) to be. kaan bih there was; there were. kaan yiʃti (with foll. imperf.) he wanted to ...

kaatib (kuttaab) clerk; writer, author

kaawiya (-aat) an iron

kabaab kabob, meat roasted on a skewer

kabat (-aat) cupboard; wardrobe

kabiir (kibaar) adult; old; big. kabiir ar-ra's big-headed, fathead. kabiir al-karʃ potbellied

kabriit coll. matches. unit 9uudi kabriit. gafaS kabriit box of matches

kabʃ ('akbaaʃ) ram, male sheep

kafa (yakfi) to be enough, sufficient; to go far

kafiil (kufalaa', -iin) guarantor

kahrabaa' electricity. daa'irat al-kahrabaa' The electric department

kalb (kilaab) dog

kalbatayn pair of pliers

kalima (-aat) word

kallaf II to cost

kam? (with doll. s.n.) How many? (with foll. p.n. or v.) How much? kam lak ...? How long have you (m.s.) been ...? kam as-saa9a? What time is it?

kamaal v.n. completion; perfection. b-t-tamaam w-l-kamaal precisely

kamaan also, too

kamkam (ykamkim) to sew, sew up a sleeve

kamkama v.n. sewing, sewing up a sleeve

kamma bih that which is there

kammiyya (-aat) amount, quantity

kanada Canada

kanadi (-yyiin) Canadian; characteristic of Canada

kaniis (kanaa'is) synagogue; temple

kaniisa (kanaa'is) church

kannas II to sweep (with a broom)

kariim (kuramaa', -iin) generous, bountiful; noble, decent

karʃ ('akriʃa) tripe; belly. kabiir al-karʃ

karyuula (karaayil) bed. syn. sariir p. saraayir

kasar (yaksir) to break s.th.

kassar II to break s.th. into pieces, smash

kaʃaf (yakʃif) to uncover

katab (yuktub) to write

kawwa II to iron s.th.

kayf? How? kayf ant? How are you? (m.s.)

kayy v.n. cauterization

kayyas II to rub with a bath sponge or luffa

kaθiir adv. very; adj. a lot; many. elat. 'akθar

kaθur (yukθur) to be abundant, abound

kaθθar II to increase, augment

kaððaab (-iin) liar

kiilo (-waat) kilogram

kiilomitr (-aat) kilometer

kiis ('akyaas) bag-shaped luffa; bundle, packet; bag

kiraa' (-aat) rent money; wage; fare

kiswa clothing; clothes

kitaab (kutub) book

kitli (ktaali) tea pot

kiðb v.n. lying; lies. s. kiðba a lie

ksil (-iin) lazy; indolent. f. kisle

ktasar VIII to be broken

kubur (yakbur) to be, become old

kull (with foll. def. n.) all of, the whole of. (with foll. indef. n.) each, every

kulliyya (-aat) college

kursi (karaasi) chair

kuut ('akwaat) jacket

kwayyis (-iin) good; nice. syn. naahi

1

laa no. syn. maaʃi. (with foll. imperf.) expresses a negative command. (with foll. perfect) expresses a negative desire or wish. laa gawwaak aLLaah! May God not keep you strong and in good health! laa yazaal ... He is still ... 'ad-dinya laa tazaal bxayr. There are still good things and good people in this world. laa yazaal 9aaTiʃ. He is still thirsty.

laa conj. if. syn. 'iðа, 'in

la prep. to, toward; for. var. 'ila

laabaj III to quarrel with s.o.

laaga III to find, encounter

laazig (-iin) act. part. contiguous, adjacent

laazim (-iin) adj. necessary, required. laazim 9ala- (with foll. imperf.) must; have to

laban coll. buttermilk

labj v.n. hitting s.o.

ladaa personal effects, belongings

laff (yliff) to turn (left, right, etc.)

laflaf (ylaflif) to wrap up s.th.; to pack, e.g., one's belongings

laflafa v.n. act of wrapping up s.th.

lagaS (yalguS) to bite

lahaj v.n. greed for money

laHas (yalHas) to lick

laHm coll. meat. unit laHma

lamman conj. when, at the time when. syn. Hiin, 9indima

landan London

latgee' f. of 'altag stammerer

law conj. if

lawn ('alwaan) color

lawwa (b-) II to circle, go around (with) s.o.

layl coll. night; nighttime. unti layla. laylat ad-duxla or laylat ad-duxuul The wedding night

layli adj. night(ly), evening. syn. masaa'i. madrasa layliyya night school

li'anna conj. because. syn. 9ala sibb

libis (yilbas) to wear; to put on

libs v.n. style of clothing

liibi (-yyiin) Libian; of Libya

liibya Libya

liif coll. bath sponges, luffas. unit liifa

lilma? inter. part. Why? syn. lay∫

lisaan (-aat) tongue

li9ib (yil9ab) to play; to play a game

ltabaj VIII to hit oneself

ltaff VIII to turn around; to surround

lubnaan Lebanon

luGa (-aat) language

luHuuH coll. pancake bread. unit luHuuHa

luzuum v.n. necessity

m

ma (with foll. v.) not. (with foll. gad) not; not yet, have not ... yet. ma gad 'absarta. I have not seen him yet. ma billa only, and no more. ma billa mi9i I only have. ma zid∫ no longer, not any more. ma zid∫ gaal 'ayya ∫ee'. He no longer said anything.

ma rel. pron. which; that which. haaδa kull ma mi9i. This is all that I have. ma fawgi w-ma taHti all that I have or own

ma'duba (ma'aadib) banquet, formal dinner

maa inter. pron. what? maa 'ismak? What is your name? maa lak? What's the matter with you?

maa' water. var. mee'

maabi∫ (neg. of bih) there isn't; there aren't

maahir (-iin) skillful; capable

maani9 (mawaani9) objection

maarib Ma'rib, city in the Y.A.R.

maasa (-aat) table; desk

maa∫ neg. part. not. maa∫ ... w-maa∫ neither ... nor

maa∫i no. syn. laa. opp. 'ii, na9am

maat (yamuut) to die, pass away

maaδi adj. past; last, e.g., 'a∫-∫ahr al-maaδi last month

mablaG (mabaaliG) amount, sum of money

mabna (mabaani) building. syn. binaaya p. -aat

mabni (-yyiin) p.p. built

mabruuk! Congratulations! mabruuk 9ala n-najaaH! Congratulations on your success!

mabsara (mabaasir) eyeglasses

madaa9a (madaayi9) hubble-bubble, water-pipe

madagga (-aat) door knocker

madiina (mudun) city, town

madrasa (madaaris) school

madxal (madaaxil) entrance; entrance hall. opp. maxraj p. maxaarij

madyuun (-iin) p.p. indebted, in debt

mafraj (mafaarij) reception room, reception hall

mafra∫a (-aat, mafaari∫) mat; rug

maftuuH (-iin) p.p. open; having been opened

magiil resting place, usu. where people relax, chatter and chew qat

magli adj. fried. Huut magli fried fish

mag9ad (magaa9id) sofa, couch; seat, bench

maGli adj. boiled. bayδ maGli boiled eggs

maGraf (maGaarif) ladle, scoop

maGrib sunset. Salaat al-maGrib The sunset prayer

maGTas (maGaaTis) bathtub; plunge bath

mahr (muhuur) dowry, bridal money

maHabba v.n. liking; love

maHaTTa (-aat) station, e.g., gas station, bus station

maHHad no one, nobody. maHHad jaa'. No one came.

maHkama (maHaakim) court, tribunal. maHkama ʃar9iyya Islamic court.

maHmuul (-iin) p.p. carried; accepted. haaδa ʃ-ʃarT maHmuul. This condition is accepted, accommodated.

maHḍar (maHaaḍir) official report, record of official findings. maHḍir at-taHgiig The investigative report

majnuun (majaaniin) crazy, insane

makaan ('amaakin) place, location. makaan al-wilaada birthplace. (-aat) room. 'al-bayt bih xams makaanaat. The house has five rooms.

makkan II to give, hand. makkanni l-mablaG. He gave me the sum of money.

maknis (makaanis) broom

maktab (makaatib) office. maktab bariid post office. maktab Turuud parcel (post) office

maktuub (makaatiib) letter, mail item. syn. risaala

malaabis clothes, clothing

malak (malaa'ika) angel. malak al-mawt Azrael, the angel of death

malaki adj. monarchic; royal

malakiyya v.n. kingship, monarchy

malik (muluuk) king

malla (ymalli) to fill, fill up; to fill out

maluuj aʃ-ʃa9iir coll. kind of bread, the main ingredient of which is barley. unit maluujat ʃa9iir

mal9aga (malaa9ig) spoon

malyaan (b-) (-iin) full (of); stained, blotted with, e.g., blood. 'at-taaniki malyaan b-l-mee'. The tank is full of water. 'aʃ-ʃamiiz malyaan b-d-damm. The shirt is stained with blood.

mamnuu9 (-iin) p.p. forbidden

man? inter. part. Who?

man rel. pron. Who; he who

manaaxa Manakha, city in the Y.A.R.

mana9 (min) (yamna9) to prevent s.o. (from)

mandiil (manaadiil) handkerchief

manʃafa (manaaʃif) towel

manzuul (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. mazkuum

mara (nisaa') woman; wife. var. mare

marag meat broth; gravy

maraḍ ('amraaḍ) illness; disease

marbuuʃ (-iin) p.p. confused, perplexed

marHaba = 'ahlan wa sahlan! Welcome! gladly, willingly

marHala (maraaHil) era; stage, phase

mariiḍ (-iin, 'amraaḍ) sick, ill

markab (maraakib) boat ; ship

markaz (maraakiz) center

marra (-aat) time; once. xamsat marraat five times. marratayn twice

mas'uul (-iin) person responsible for s.o. or s.th.

mas'uuliyya (-aat) responsibility

masaa' evening, night (m.)

masaa'i adj. night(ly). syn. layli

masaafa (-aat) distance. masaafat miilayn distance of two miles

masarra (-aat) joy, happiness

masjid (masaajid) mosque

masmuuH p.p. permitted, allowed. opp. mamnuu9. masmuuH li- (s.o.) b- (s.th.). masmuuH-la b-d-duxuul. He is allowed to enter.

massa II to bid s.o. good evening

maSarr (-aat) woman's scarf, shawl

maSduum (-iin) p.p. having been hit in a car accident

maSruuf (maSaariif) money spent, expenditure

ma∫a (yam∫i) to walk. syn. xuTi

ma∫fir (ma∫aafir) lip. 'al-ma∫fir al-'a9la the upper lip. 'al-ma∫fir al-'asfal the lower lip

ma∫Guul (-iin) busy

ma∫nuun p.p. filtered (water)

ma∫wi adj. grilled; roasted. Huut ma∫wi grilled fish

ma∫huur b- (-iin) famous for

mata? inter. adv. When? syn. f-ayy Hiin?

matfal (mataafil) spittoon

matHaf (mataaHif) museum

matka (mataaki) cushion, pad

maTaar (-aat) airport

maTar ('amTaar) rain

maTbax (maTaabix) kitchen. old Yemeni kitchen dayma p. diyam

maTluub (maTaaliib) requirement

maT9am (maTaa9im) restaurant

mawgif (mawaagif) stand; situation

mawjuud (-iin) found; available; present

mawlid (mawaalid) birthday of a prophet or a saint. mawlid an-nabi the Prophet Muhammad's Birthday

mawt v.n. death

mawz coll. bananas. unit mawza

maw9id (mawaa9iid) appointment, appointed time

maw9uud p.p. appointed, set (date)

maxla9 (maxaali9) place in a public bath where the people take off their clothes

maydaan (mayaadiin) square. maydaan at-taHriir Tahrir Square

mayyit ('amwaat) deceased, dead person

mazhara (mazaahir) flower vase

mazkuum (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. manzuul

maθal ('amθaal) proverb, saying

maθalan for example

ma9 prep. with. ma9 as-salaama! Goodbye!

ma9aa∫ (-aat) salary; stipend. syn. murattab

ma9gim (ma9aagim) threshhold

ma9guul (-iin) reasonable, sensible. Gayr ma9guul unreasonable

ma9had (ma9aahid) institute

ma9ruuf (-iin) known, well-known. ma9ruuf b- famous for, known by

maw$\dot{\text{d}}$uu9 (mawaa$\dot{\text{d}}$ii9) subject; matter

ma$\dot{\text{d}}$luum (-iin) p.p. oppressed, unjustly treated

mee' water. var. maa'. mee' Haami hot water. mee' mfawwar boiled water

mGallig (-iin) adj. closed, shut

mibardig (-iin) snuff manufacturer

mibsir (-iin) act. part. having seen

mib9id (-iin) act. part. having gone or been away

mifallig (-iin) wood-cutter

miftaaH (mafaatiiH) key

miGbir (-iin) dusty. 'al-jaww miGbir. The weather is dusty.

mihani vocational; industrial. markaz at-tadriib al-mihani the vocational training center

mihna (mihan) vocation; job

miHalwi (-yiin) sweets maker

miHtaaj l- (-iin) act. part. in need of

miHtafil (-iin) act. part. having celebrated

miHtarig (-iin) act. part. having been burned

miil (-aat) neon light. p. 'amyaal mile

miilaad v.n. birth; nativity; birthday. 9iid al-miilaad Christmas

miinaa' (mawaani') seaport

miizaan (mawaaziin) scales, balance

mikaaniiki (-yyiin) mechanic; mechanical

mikannis (-iin) sweeper

mikayyif (-iin) act. part. lightly drunk; having chewed qat

milkeh v.n. ownership

millaaya (-aat) bed sheet

miltabij (-iin) act. part. having hit oneself

min prep. from. min ayn? from where? min 'awwal adv. before, previously. min Hiin since. min mayd because of. min sibb = 9ala sibb in order to. min taHt ra'sak because of you

minaHHis (-iin) copper, brass smith

minaxwil (-iin) sieve-maker

mintabih (-iin) alert; attentive

mintahi (-yiin) act. part. having come to an end

minTaga (manaaTig) region, district

miraa9aa v.n. waiting for s.th., awaiting s.th.

mirtaaH (-iin) comfortable, at ease

misabbira (-aat) dough kneader and cook

misallaH (-iin) armed. 'al-guwwaat al-misallaHa The armed forces

miskiin (masaakiin) poor, miserable; humble

mistaGni 9an (-yiin) act. part. having done without s.th. or s.o.

mistarji9 (-iin) act. part. having regained

mista9jil (-iin) adj. in a hurry, hurried

miSarr (-aat) woman's scarf

miSr Egypt. var. muSr

miSri (-yyiin) Egyptian; of Egypt

miʃkila (maʃaakil) problem

miʃti (-yiin) act. part. having wanted, desirous of

miʃtki (-yiin) act. part. having complained; complainant

mitraggi (-yiin) act. part. having been promoted

miwassid (-iin) upholsterer

mixayyiT (-iin) tailor

mixazzin (-iin) act. part. having chewed qat

mixbir (-iin) having informed; informer

mixzaan (maxaaziin) storage room, storehouse

miya one hundred. miyatayn two hundred

miθl ('amθaal) usually with foll. suff. pron. s.o. similar to. 'amθaalak the likes of you. prep. like, similar to

mowtar (mawaatir) car, automobile

mrabbaT (-iin) p.p. tied up, bound, shackled

mʃann (-aat) water filter

mtadd VIII to stretch, extend

mtana9 (min) VIII to refrain (from)

mu'addab (-iin) well-behaved

mu'addi (-yiin) act. part. having given; giver

mu'ajjir (-iin) landlord, lessor; manager (of an apartment building)

mu'assas (-iin) p.p. established; built

mu'assasa (-aat) foundation, establishment; firm

mu'aððin (-iin) muezzin

mubaarak (-iin) p.p. blessed

mubaarik (-iin) act. part. having blessed

mubaaʃir (-iin) waiter; usher

mubalbil (-iin) act. part. causing confusion or disorder

mub9ad (-iin) p.p. deported

mudarris (-iin) instructor, teacher

mudda (mudad) period of time. muddat sana period of one year

mudiir (-iin) director, manager

mudxil (-iin) having let s.o. in

mufaaxara v.n. boasting, bragging

mufallat (-iin) p.p. set at liberty, on one's own

mufiid (-iin) act. part. benefitting; useful

mufthin (-iin) well-off

mugaabala v.n. meeting s.o.; interview

mugaam p.p. ploughed; tilled

mugaddim (-iin) act. part. having applied, submitted an application

mugambir (-iin) act. part. seated; sitting

mugassam ('ila) (-iin) p.p. divided (into)

mugaSgiS (-iin) having cut up s.th.

mugazzaz (-iin) p.p. grumpy; disgusted

muGaali (-yiin) act. part. selling s.th. at a high or excessive price

muhandis (-iin) engineer

muhimm (-iin) important. elat. 'ahamm

muhtamm b- (-iin) act. part. concerned with, interested in

muHaafaḍa (9ala) v.n. maintenance (of), safeguarding

muHaakaa v.n. talking to s.o.

muHaaki (-yiin) act. part. having talked to s.o.

muHaawala v.n. attempt; trial

muHaawil (-iin) act. part. having tried

muHaddad p.p. fixed. si9r muHaddad fixed price

muHallabiyya kind if jelly

muHayyi (-iin) act. part. having greeted

muHtall (-iin) act. part. occupying (forces)

mujaawib (-iin) act. part. having answered; respondent

mujtami9 (-iin) act. part. meeting; having been in a meeting

mukamkim (-iin) act. part. having sewed up a sleeve

mukayyis (-iin) masseur, esp. one who uses a luffa

mukmil (-iin) act. part. having completed

mulaagaa v.n. encountering

mulaagi (-yiin) act. part. having found or encountered

mulaflaf (-iin) p.p. wrapped

mulaflif (-iin) act. part. having wrapped up s.th.

mulawwaza dessert, made of sugar and almonds

mumarriḍ (-iin) male nurse

mumkin possible. (with foll. verb) May...? Is it possible that...?

mumlik (-iin) having contracted a marriage

mumtaaz (-iin) super; excellent

mumtadd (-iin) act. part. extending, stretching

munaḍḍif (-iin) act. part. having cleaned; cleaner

munHa (munaH) scholarship, fellowship

munsaHib (-iin) act. part. withdrawing; having withdrawn (armed forces)

muntaʃir (-iin) act. part. spreading. maraḍ muntaʃir an epidemic

muntaxab (-iin) p.p. elected; selected

muntaxib (-iin) act. part. having elected or selected; elector

muntazah (-aat) park, public garden

muraa9i (-yiin) waiting or having waited for

murattab (-aat) monthly salary. syn. ma9aaʃ

muriḍ (yamraḍ) to be, become sick

mursal (-iin) p.p. having been sent

mursil (-iin) sender

murtaaH (-iin) act. part. comfortable, at ease

murtafa9 (-aat) elevetaion, elevated place

muruur v.n. traffic flow; passing. 'idaarat al-muruur the traffic bureau. ʃurTat al-muruur highway patrol, traffic police

musaafir (-iin) act. part. traveller; passenger

musaayir (-iin) act. part. walking with s.o.

musaa9ada v.n. help, assistance

musaa9id (-iin) act. part. having helped; assistant

musaddad (-iin) p.p. blocked; turned off

musajjal (-iin) registered, certified

musajjil (-iin) act. part. having registered; registrar

musri9 (-iin) act. part. hastening; speeding

musta'jar (-iin) p.p. rented

musta'jir (-iin) tenant, lessee

mustafiid (min) (-iin) act. part. having benefitted (by)

mustagiil (-iin) act. part. having resigned. syn. mfallit

mustaHigg (-iin) act. part. deserving, worthy of

mustajiib (-iin) act. part. responding, responsive

mustaʃfa (-yaat) hospital (m.). mustaʃfa al-wilaada maternity hospital

musta9idd (-iin) ready, prepared

musta9mal (-iin) p.p. used

musta9mil (-iin) having used

muSaab (-iin) p.p. injured, haveing been injured

muSaddig (-iin) act. part. having believed

muSalfa9 (-iin) p.p. slapped

muSalfi9 (-iin) act. part. having slapped

muSalli (-iin) act. part. having prayed; worshipper

muSr Egypt. var. miSr

mutawassiT (-iin) act. part. go-between

mutazawwij (-iin) act. part. married

muta'akkid (-iin) certain, sure

mutabaddil (-iin) act. part. changing; changeable

mutafaahim (-iin) act. part. understanding. mutafaahim l- aware of, cognizant of

mutafaagid (-iin) act. part. having checked s.th.

mutagaabil (-iin) act. part. having met each other

mutaGaddi (-yiin) act. part. having had lunch

mutaGayyir (-yiin) act. part. changing; changeable

mutaHaaki (-yiin) act. part. having spoken with each other

mutakallim (-iin) act. part. speaking; having spoken; speaker

mutalaabij (-iin) act. part. having quarreled with each other

mutaraakim (-iin) act. part. piled up, accumulated

mutarjam (-iin) p.p. translated

mutarjim (-iin) translator

mutasallif (-iin) act. part. having borrowed money

muta∫aawir (-iin) having consulted

mutawassiT adj. middle, medium. daxl mutawassiT middle income

mutawazzi9 (-iin) act. part. having been distributed

mutaxarrij (-iin) act. part. having graduated

mutaẓaahir (-iin) act. part. demonstrating; pretending; demonstrator

muta9aawin (-iin) act. part. having cooperated; cooperative

muta9allim (-iin) act. part. educated

muttafig (-iin) act. part. being in agreement

mut9a∫∫i (-yiin) act. part. having had dinner

muTabbin (-iin) polygamist

muTallib (-iin) beggar

muus ('amwaas) razor

mufaawaga v.n. agreement; approval

muwaaTin (-iin) citizen, countryman

muwaffag (-iin) successful, prospering. muwaffag! Good luck! I wish you success!

muwaḍḍaf (-iin) p.p. employee

muxaabara v.n. telephone call

muxallafaat leftovers; refuse

muxtalif (-iin) act. part. different

muzayyin (-iin) barber. syn. Hallaag

muðii9 (-iin) act. part. having broadcasted; broadcaster

muðnib (-iin) guilty

mu9aafa (-yiin) p.p. cured

mu9aafi (-yiin) act. part. having cured s.o.

mu9aanid (-iin) act. part. stubborn, obstinate

mu9allim (-iin) act. part. teacher, instructor. syn. mudarris

mu9aTTal (-iin) out of order; shutdown, stopped

mu9ayyan (-iin) specified; certain

mu9jib (-iin) act. part. having pleased s.o.

mu9ḍam (with foll. def. n.) most of

n

naafuura (nawaafiir) water fountain

naahi (-iin) fine, good. elat. 'aHsan, 'aHla. f. naahiya

naam (ynuum) to fall asleep; to sleep

naamis (coll. mosquitoes. unit naamisi

naar (niiraan) fire; gunfire. naar! naar! very expensive

naas people (m.p.)

naasi (-yiin) act. part. having forgotten

naaʃif (-iin) dry. elat. 'anʃaf

nabi ('anbiyaa') prophet

nafax (yanfux) to puff; to blow

nafa9 (yinfa9) to benefit s.o.

nafs ('anfus) -self (with suff. pron.) 'axað nafsa 'ila 'idaarat al-muruur. He took himself, went to the traffic bureau. SaGiir an-nafs mean-spirited

nafs (with foll. n.) the same. nafs aʃ-ʃay' the same thing

nagaʃ (yunguʃ) to color the hands, face, and feet of a woman

nagʃ v.n. coloring the hands, face, and feet of a woman

nahaar daylight, day. fi n-nahaar during the day

naHiif (-iin) skinny, thin. elat. 'anHaf

najaaH v.n. success; success in, passing an examination

najaH (yinjaH) to succeed, to pass an examination

najis (-iin) dirty; impure. elat. 'anjas

najjaar (-iin) carpenter

najma (nujuum) star

nasama (no plural) soul. 'alf nasama 1,000 souls (inhabitants)

naSaH (yanSaH) to advise, counsel s.o.

naSiib v.n. luck, chance; share

naSiiHa (naSaa'iH) advice

naSraani (naSaara) Christian

naʃʃaad (-iin) minstrel; poet. syn. maddaaH p. -iin

naʃuuT (-iin) active

natiija (nataa'ij) result, outcome

naTTal II to cause s.th. to fall down

nawm v.n. sleep, sleeping. syn. ruguud

nawwar II to enlighten, fill with light

naw9 ('anwaa9) kind, sort

naxiiT v.n. haughtiness, pride

nazal (yinzil) to come down, get down

naḍag (yunḍug) to throw s.th. on the floor

naḍaafa v.n. cleanliness, cleanness

naḍiif (niḍaaf, -iin) clean. elat. 'anḍaf

naḍḍaf II to clean

na9am yes. syn. 'ii. opp. maaʃi

ngala9 VII to go away. 'ingali9! imperat. Go away!

nihaaya v.n. end, finis, conclusion. min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya from start to finish. fi n-nihaaya at the end, finally

nisi (yinsa) to forget

niswaan women. var. nisee', nisaa'. s. mare

niḍaam ('anḍima) system; order, organization

nsaHab VII intran. to withdraw, go back

nʃaaLLa hopefully (lit. "If God wills")

ntagal VIII to be communicated (disease)

ntaha VIII to finish, come to an end

ntasa VIII to be forgotten

ntaxab VIII to elect; to select

nuSf ('anSaaf) half. var. nuSS

nuSS ('anSaaf) half. var. nuSf

nuub coll. bees. unit nuuba

nuzuul v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. zukaam

nuxra (-aat) nose

r

ra'a (yira) to see. syn. 'absar

ra'iis (ru'asaa') president; chairman

ra'iisi adj. main, principal

ra's (ru'uus) head. ra's as-sana beginning of the year, New Year. ra's guʃmi a radish

raa'iHa (rawaa'iH) smell; scent

raab (yiruub) to be curdled (milk)

raabi9 fourth

raagid (-iin) act. part. sleeping; asleep

raaH (yruuH) to go; to leave

raajam III to stone, throw rocks at s.o.

raaji9 (-iin) act. part. returning, going back. 'innaa lillaah wa 'innaa 'ilayhi raaji9uun. Lit. "We belong to God and we are returning to Him," i.e., There is no recourse.

raa9a (l-) (yraa9i) to wait (for), await s.o.

rabaT (yarbuT) to tie, tie up

rabba II to bring up, raise

rabH (rubaaH) monkey; ape

radd (yrudd) to send back; to bring back. laa raddak aLLaah! Go to hell!

ragaba (-aat, rgaab) neck

ragad (yurgud) to sleep, fall asleep

ragam ('argaam) number, No.; numeral

ragda (-aat) instance n. a nap

raHam (yarHam) to have mercy on

raHma v.n. mercy; compassion

rajiim damned, cursed. 'aʃ-ʃayTaan ar-rajiim Satan, the cursed devil

rajjaal (rijaal) man

rajjaali adj. of rajjaal man-like

raj9a (-aat) instance n. a return

rakab (yirkab) to mount an animal; to ride, e.g., in a vehicle, on a bicycle, etc.; board, e.g., a plane

rakkab II to place, e.g., uncooked food on a fire: rakkab aT-Tabiix; to make s.o. ride

ramaadi (-yyiin) adj. grey. f. ramaadiyya

ramaḍaan Ramadhan, the holy month of fasting

ramzi (-yyiin) nominal

rasab (yursub) to fail, not to pass an examination. rasab fi l-'imtiHaan. He failed in the examination.

rasmi (-yyiin) official, formal

rasuul (rusul) messenger; prophet

raʃada (-aat) prescription

raTb adj. humid. elat. 'arTab

raTl ('arTaal) unit of weight = one kilogram

raxiiS (-iin) cheap, inexpensive. elat. 'arxaS

raḍi (9an) (yarḍa) to be pleased (with) s.o.

ribH ('arbaaH) profit; interest

riHla (-aat) trip; journey

riiH (ryaaH) wind. 'al-yawm ryaaH. It's windy today.

riji9 (yirja9) to return, come back. riji9 waraa' to back up, go in reverse

rijl ('arjul) foot, one's foot (f.)

risaala (rasaa'il) letter, mail item. syn. maktuub

riyaaḍiyyaat mathematics

rizz coll. rice. unit Habbat rizz

rtaaH VIII to be comfortable; to rest

rtafa9 VIII to go up; to increase

rub9 ('arbaa9) one-fourth. xamsa 'illa rub9 quarter to five

ruguud v.n. sleep, sleeping

rujuu9 v.n. returning, going back

rukuub v.n. riding, e.g., in a vehicle, on a bicycle, etc.

rukn ('arkaan) corner, e.g., of a street; angle

rusuub v.n. failure (in an examination)

ruSaaba Rusaba, village near Dhamar in the Y.A.R.

ruTuuba v.n. humidity

ruusi (ruus) Russian; characteristic of Russia. f. ruusiyya

ruusiya Russia

ryaal (-aat) riyaal. var. riyaal

s

sa'al (yis'al) to ask, inquire

saabi9 seventh

saadis sixth

saafar III to travel

saag (ysuug) to drive

saahi (sawaahi) inattentive; absent-minded

saakit (-iin) act. part. silent; quiet

saani adv. straight, straight ahead. ruH saani! Go straight!

saar (ysiir) to go; to leave; to walk

saarab III to stand in line, queue

saayar III to walk with s.o., engage s.o. in walking

saayila current of a stream

saa9 prep. like, similar to. huw saa9 al-jamal. He is like a camel

saa9a (-aat) hour; watch; clock. saa9at xams at five o'clock

saa9ad III to help, assist

saa9at-ma conj. upon, at the time when. 'absarta saa9at-ma xaraj min Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat. I saw him at the time when he came out of the operating room.

saa9id (sawaa9id) arm, forearm

saba' Sheba, city in the Y.A.R.

sabab ('asbaab) reason, cause

sabaH (yisbaH) to swim

saba9miya seven hundred

saba9Ta9ʃ/-ar seventeen

sabbaak (-iin) pipe fitter. syn. samkari p. samaakira

sabbar II to make; to do

sabtambir September

sab9a seven. sab9at rijaal seven men. sab9a 'alf 7,000

sab9iin seventy

sadd ('asdaad) dam

safaara (-aat) embassy

sagf (suguuf) ceiling; roof

sahl (-iin) easy, not difficult. elat. 'ashal

sajjal II to register; to record

sakan (yuskun) to dwell, live in a place

salaam v.n. peace. 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! Peace be upon you!

salaama v.n. safety. ma9 as-salaama! Goodbye!

salaTa coll. lettuce; salad. ra's salaTa head of lettuce

salab coll. rope. unit salaba

saliiT motor oil; oil

sallam II to protect, keep s.o. safe. sallam 9ala to greet s.o.; to shake hands with s.o.

sallaaT (-iin) oil or honey vendor

samaa' (samaawaat) heaven; sky. var. samee'

samaaH v.n. forgiveness

samaa9 v.n. hearing, listening

samaH l- (yismaH) to allow, permit s.o. to do s.th. samaH-li 'adxul. He allowed me to enter. 'ismaH-li! Pardon me!

samak coll. fish. p. 'asmaak

samar (yasmir) to chat, talk

sambuuk (sanaabik) sailing boat

samiin (simaan) fat. elat. 'asman

samkari (samaakira) pipe fitter. syn. sabbaak p. -iin

samma II to name, call s.o. or s.th.

samn coll. shortening, ghee

sana (siniin, -waat) year. 'as-sana al-maaðiya last year

sannab II to stand up. syn. waggaf

santraal (-aat) central telephone line; telephone operator

sariir (saraayir) bed. syn. karyuula karaayil

saTH ('asTuH) surface. taHt saTH al-'arð beneath the surface of the earth

sawd coll. charcoal. unit sawda

sawdaa' (suud) black (f.). m. 'aswad

sawwaag (-iin) cab driver

saxxaan (-aat) heater. saxxaan al-mee' the hot water heater

sayyaara (-aat) car. b-s-sayyaara by car

sgee' (yisgi) to water, e.g., trees

siid ('asyaad) master, lord

siinama (-aat) cinema

sikarbiil (-aat) woman's shoes

sikir (yiskar) to get drunk

sikirteer (-iin) secretary

sikkiin (sakaakiin) knife

silaaH ('asliHa) arms, weapons

silkaab v.n. pouring out, spilling

sil9a (sila9) commodity

simi9 (yisma9) to hear

sinn ('asnaan) tooth

siraaj (-aat) light of a car; (electricity) light

sirr ('asraar) secret; v.n. secrecy

sirwaal (saraawiil) woman's baggy pants

sitmiya six hundred

sitta six. sittat rijaal six men. sitta 'alf 6,000

sittiin sixty

siTTa9ʃ/-ar sixteen

siwaaga v.n. driving (of a car)

siwaara (-aat) bracelet

siyaaHa v.n. tourism

siyaaHi adj. tourism; travel

siyaasa (-aat) policy

si9r ('as9aar) price; tariff

sofyeeti adj. Soviet, Russian. 'al-'itti-Haad as-sofyeeti the U.S.S.R.

sta'jar X to rent s.th.

stafaad X to benefit

stagaal X to resign. syn. fallat

stagall X to be, become independent

stagbal X to receive, welcome. stagbalta fi l-maTaar. I met him at the airport.

stajla X to find out, discover s.th. about s.o.

stakbar X to consider oneself great or important; to swell up with pride

stama9 ('ila) (yistami9) to listen (to) s.th. or s.o.

stawfa X to receive s.th. in full. stawfa θ-θaman to be paid in full

sta9mal X to use, utilize

su'aal ('as'ila, -aat) question

sukkar coll. sugar

sukkaan inhabitants. s. saakin. p. -aat steering wheel

sukuut v.n. silence

sulTaan (salaaTiin) sultan, (absolute) ruler

sunna (sunan) habitual practice, customary procedure (in Islam)

suug ('aswaag) marketplace, market

suur ('aswaar) surrounding wall; fence

suuri (-yyiin) Syrian; of Syria. f. suuriyya

suuriyya Syria

S

Saabuun coll. soap. un. Saabuuna

SaaH (ySiiH) to cry out, yell

SaaHib ('aSHaab) (with foll. n.) possessor; proprietor; friend; acquaintance

Saar (ySiir) to become; (with foll. imperf.) to begin, start

SabaaH morning. fi S-SabaaH in the morning. syn. 'aS-SubH. SabaaH al-xayr! Good morning!

Sabar (yaSbir) to be patient; to wait

Sabban II to wash with soap

Sabr v.n. patience

SabuuH breakfast

Sadam (yuSdum) to hit in a car accident

Saddag II to believe s.o.

Sadiig ('aSdigaa') friend

Sadr (Suduur) bosom; chest. Sadr al-makaan the foremost part of the room

Saff (Sufuuf) class; classroom

Safraa' (Sufr) yellow (f.). m. 'aSfar

SaGiir (SiGaar, -iin) young; small. elat. 'aSGar. SaGiir an-nafs mean-spirited

SaHaafa the press; journalism

SaHH (ySuHH) to be all right; to be allowed, permissible. ma ySuHH/. It cannot be. SaHH l- to be lawful for s.o.

SaHiiH (-iin) correct, true

SaHn (SuHuun) dish; plate

Salaa (Salawaat) prayer (f.). Salaat aS-SubH the morning prayer. Salaat al-maGrib the sunset prayer

Salb adj. uncultivated; rocky. elat. 'aSlab

Salfa9 (ySalfi9) to slap s.o.

Salfa9a v.n. slapping s.o.

Salla (ySalli) to pray

Sana9 (yaSna9) to manufacture

Sandal (Sanaadil) pair of sandals

Sanduug (Sanaadiig) box, crate; trunk. Sanduug bariid mail box

San9a Sanaa

Sarab (yuSrub) to harvest, reap

Saraf (yaSrif) to spend money

Sarmiya (-aat) woman's headdress

Saydali (Sayaadila) pharmacist

Saydaliyya (-aat) pharmacy

Sayyaf II to spend the summer as holiday

Sa9b (-iin) difficult. elat. 'aS9ab

Sa9da Sa'da, city in the Y.A.R.

SiHHa v.n. health. wazaarat aS-SiHHa The ministry of health

Sinaa9a v.n. manufacturing; industry. madrasa Sinaa9iyya vocational, industrial school

STabaH (yiSTabiH) to have breakfast

Sudaa9 v.n. headache

Suraab harvest time

Suura (Suwar) picture; form, shape

Su9uud v.n. ascending; ascent. opp. hubuuT

SummaaTa (SummaT) headdress

ʃ

ʃaaf (yʃuuf) to see

ʃaagi (ʃugaa) workman, laborer

ʃaahi tea. kuup ʃaahi cup of tea; tea cup

ʃaahid (ʃuhuud) witness

ʃaakir 1- (-iin) act. part. thankful to s.o. or for s.th.

ʃaal (yʃiil) to carry; to lift

ʃaal (ʃiilaan) shawl for men. maSarr p. -aat shawl for women

ʃaarib (ʃawaarib) moustache

ʃaarib (-iin) act. part. drunk

ʃaari9 (ʃawaari9) street

ʃaawar III to consult s.o., ask s.o.'s advice

ʃaayil (-iin) act. part. carrying

ʃadd (yʃidd) to set out to do s.th.

ʃafa (yiʃfi) to cure, heal s.o., restore s.o. to health

ʃahaada (-aat) degree, certificate

ʃahr ('aʃhir) month. 'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaδi last month

ʃaka 9ala (yiʃki) to complain to s.o.

ʃakar (yuʃkur) to thank

ʃakwa v.n. complaining. p. ʃakaawi complaint

ʃall (yʃill) to carry; to lift; to steal

ʃall v.n. carrying (away); stealing

ʃamaal north (of), northern part (of). ʃamaal ʃarg northeast. ʃamaal Garb northwest

ʃamiiz (ʃumzaan, ʃummaz) shirt

ʃamm (yʃimm) to smell

ʃamm v.n. act of smelling

ʃams sun (f.)

ʃamTa (ʃimiiT) bag, suitcase

ʃam9 coll. candles. unit ʃam9a

ʃann (yʃinn) to filter (water)

ʃaraab (-aat) pair of socks. ʃaraab nisaa'i pair of stockings

ʃarg east, eastern part (of). ʃamaal ʃarg northeast. ʃamaal Garb northwest

ʃariif (-iin, ʃurafaa') honest, respectable

ʃariik (ʃurakaa') partner; shareholder

ʃarii9a Sharia. 'aʃ-ʃarii9a the canonical law (of Islam)

ʃarika (-aat) company, firm

ʃarT (ʃuruuT) condition, stipulation

ʃaTala (-aat) fork

ʃaTr ('aʃTur) part, portion. 'aʃ-ʃaTr aʃ-ʃamaali North Yemen. syn. 'al-yaman aʃ-ʃamaali

ʃaTT (yʃuTT) to tear, rip s.th.

ʃawa (yiʃwi) to roast, grill

ʃawka (ʃuwak, -aat) fork. syn. ʃaTala p. -aat

ʃaxS ('aʃxaaS) person, someone; somebody

ʃayTaan (ʃayaaTiin) devil. 'aʃ-ʃayTaan) Satan

ʃay' ('aʃyaa') something; anything. var. ʃee'

ʃayyab II to grow old, become an old man

ʃa9iir coll. barley. unit ʃa9iira

ʃa9r coll. hair. unit ʃa9ra

ʃiba9 v.n. state of being satiated with food. opp. juu9

ʃidda v.n. intensity; force

ʃigaara (ʃigaayir) cigarette

ʃijar coll. trees. unit ʃijara

ʃimaal adv. left; n. left hand. syn. yasaar

ʃiraa' v.n. buying, purchasing

ʃirba soup

ʃirib (yiʃrab) to drink; to smoke. ʃirib madaa9a. He smoked a water-pipe.

ʃta VIII to like, desire; to want. imperf. yiʃti

ʃtaGal VIII to work

ʃtahar (b-) VIII to be famous (for)

ʃtara VIII to buy

ʃtarak VIII to subscribe; to participate

ʃtka (min) (yiʃtki) to complain (of) s.o. or s.th.

ʃugga (ʃugag) apartment

ʃuGl ('aʃGaal) work, job. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal The ministry of public works

ʃuka v.n. complaining. var. ʃakwa

ʃukr v.n. thanks, thanking. 'alf ʃukr many thanks

ʃukran! Thanks!

ʃurb v.n. drinking. 'al-'akl w-ʃ-ʃurb eating and drinking

ʃurTi (ʃurTa) policeman

ʃuum v.n. evil omen; misfortune

ʃuu9 (-iin) ugly (physically)

ʃwayya a little; some. maʃGuul ʃwayya a little busy. ʃwayyat gahwa some coffee. ʃwayya ʃwayya slowly. syn. dala dala

t

ta'akkad V to be sure, certain

ta'diya v.n. giving

ta'ʃiira (-aat) visa

taab (yituub) to repent, do penance

taabi9iyya (-aat) nationality; citizenship

taajir (tujjaar) dealer; merchant

taaniki (tawaaniki) tank, e.g., gasoline tank, water tank, etc. taaniki l-mee' the water tank

taariix (tawaariix) date; history. taariix al-wilaada birthdate

taasi9 ninth

taayir (-aat) car tire. syn. 9ajala p. 9ijiil

taa9ib (-iin) tired

tabaddal V to be changed; to be replaced

taba9 (yitba9) to adhere to, follow

tadliik v.n. act of rubbing with a pumice stone

tadriis v.n. teaching, instruction

tafaagad VI to check, inspect; to examine s.o. medically

tafaagud v.n. act of checking s.th.

tafaaham VI to reach an understanding, come to an agreement

tafal (yatful) to spit

tafarraT V to chatter in a tafruTa

tafaḍḍal! Go ahead! Please! (m.s.)

tafla (-aat) n. of instance a spit

tafliit v.n. resignation. syn. 'istigaala

tafruTa (tafaariiT) women's gatherings, sessions, incl. qat sessions

tagaabal VI to meet each other; to get together

tagaatal VI to quarrel with each other

tagaddam V to go ahead; to advance

tagahwa (yitgahwa) to be given coffee

tagamba9 (yatagamba9) = gamba9 jump for joy; to walk arrogantly

tagriib prep. about, approximately

taGallag V to be closed, shut

taGadda V to have lunch

taGawfal (yataGawfal) to be duped

taGayyar V to be changed

taHaaka VI to talk with each other

taHaaki v.n. talking with each other

taHaddad V to be defined, set; to be limited

taHaggag (min) V to assure oneself (of)

taHammal V to put up with; to endure

taHammam V to bathe, take a bath

taHayyar V to be perplexed

taHgiig v.n. investigation

taHiyya v.n. greeting

taHsiin v.n. improvement, improving

taHt adv. downstairs; below; prep. beneath, under. taHt 'amrak at your service

tajaawab (ma9) VI to respond (with) s.o. or s.th.

tajaahal VI to ignore s.o. or s.th.

tajassas V to spy

tajdiid v.n. renewing, renovation

tajhiiz v.n. providing

tajriib v.n. trial

takaffal V to be responsible or liable

takallam V to speak, talk

takallum v.n. speaking

takawwan min V to be made up of, to consist of

takniis v.n. sweeping

taksi (takaasi) taxi, cab

taksiir v.n. smashing

takyiis v.n. act of rubbing or massaging with a luffa

talaaga VI to meet with each other

talafoon (-aat) telephone

talfan l- (ytalfin) to telephone s.o.

tamaam right! correct! exactly. b-t-tamaam w-l-kamaal precisely

tamanna V to wish, hope

tamayraḍ (yatamayraḍ) to pretend to be ill

tamaywat (yatamaywat) to pretend to be dead

tamm (ytimm) to finish, complete s.th.

tamr coll. dates. unit tamra

tanaazal VI to condescend

tanaffas V to breathe

tanak (tiniik) tin container

tanaḍḍaf V to be cleaned

tannuur (tanaaniir) bread baking oven

tanḍiif v.n. cleaning

taragga V to be promoted (to a higher position)

tarak (yutruk) to leave, depart

tarbiya v.n. education, upbringing. wazaarat at-tarbiya The ministry of education

tarjam (yitarjim) to translate

tarjama v.n. translating; translation

tasallaf V to borrow money

tasajjal V to be recorded, registered

tasawwag V to go shopping

tasjiil v.n. recording, registering

tasmiya v.n. naming

taSarraf V to act freely; to dispose freely

taSarraf (b-) V to pay out money (for). taSarraf b-kull maSaariif al-9urs. He paid all the expenses of the wedding.

taSriiH (b-) (taSaariH) official permit, permission (to)

taʃaawar VI to consult with each other

taʃaawur v.n. consulting; consultation

taʃakkar V to be thankful, grateful

taTahhar V to be circumcised; to be cleansed

taTbiin v.n. polygamy

taThiir v.n. circumcision; cleansing, purging

tawassaT V to be in the middle

tawazza9 V to be distributed

tawzii9 v.n. distribution

taxabba' V to hide oneself

taxarrab V to be or become ruined, spoiled

taxarraj V to graduate

taxattan V to be circumcised

taxziin v.n. chewing qat

tays (tuyuus) billy goat

tayyih demon. pron. this (f.). syn. haaδi, haaδeh

tazawwaj V to get married; to marry s.o.

tazkiya v.n. praise; exultation. tazkiyat an-nafs self-praise

taδkara (taδaakir) ticket, admission ticket; card

taḍaahar b- VI to pretend to be

ta9aal! Come! (m.s.). syn. jii'!

ta9aalaj VI to be under or receive medical treatment

ta9aawan VI to cooperate

ta9aawun v.n. cooperation

ta9allam V to learn

ta9aʃʃa V to have dinner

ta9izz Taiz, city in the Y.A.R.

ta9liim v.n. teaching, instruction

tiis ('atyaas) one's rear end. syn. jaHr p. 'ajHaar

tijaah adv. towards; in front of

tijaara (-aat) commerce; trade

timinni v.n. wish, hope

tisa9miya nine hundred. tisa9miyat rajjaal 900 men

tisa9Ta9ʃ/-ar nineteen

tis9a nine. tis9at rijaal nine men. tis9a 'alf 9,000

tis9iin ninety

ti9ijjaab v,n, act of being amazed

tka (yitki) to meet, talk, and chew qat

tSalfa9 (yitSalfa9) to be slapped

ttafag VIII to come to an agreement. ttafag 9ala to agree on s.th.

ttarjam (yittarjam) to be translated

ttaSal b- VIII to contact s.o.

tuffaaH coll. apples. unit tuffaaHa

tuhaama Tihama, area along the western Arabian coast south of Hijaz

turki ('atraak; turk) Turkish; characteristic of Turkey

tuunis Tunisia; Tunis

tuunisi (-yyiin) Tunisian; of Tunisia

twaTTa V to be lowered

txarbaT (yitxarbaT) to be mixed up

T

Taabi9 (Tawaabi9) postage stamp

Taag (yTiig) to be able to bear or stand s.th.

Taaga (Tiigaan) window

Taalib (Tullaab) student

Taalig (-aat) divorced, repudiated

Taar (yTiir) intran. to fly, fly away

Taasa (Tiisaan) drum; cooking utensil

Tabax (yuTbux) to cook

Tabbaa9 (-iin) typist. yiʃtaGil Tabbaa9. He works as a typist.

Tabiib ('aTibbaa') medical doctor. syn. Hakiim p. Hukamaa'

Tabiina (Tabaa'in) second wife

Tabiix cooked food or food prepared for cooking; lamb stew (dish)

Tabii9a v.n. nature; natural disposition; character

Tabx v.n. cooking. Tabx aT-Ta9aam cooking the food

Tab9an of course, certainly

Taffa II to turn off (the light)

Tahraan Tehran

TaHiin coll. wheat flour. syn. dagiig

Talaag v.n. divorce

Talab (yaTlub) to demand, ask for

Talab (-aat) application; request

Tala9 (yuTlu9) to come up (to a place)

Tali ('aTlu') lamb (meat); ram

Tallab II to beg

Tallag II to divorce

Talla9 II to take out s.o. or s.th.

TamaaTiis coll. tomatoes. un. TuuTusa

Tama9 v.n. greed

Tama9i (-yyiin) greedy; covetous

Tard (Turuud) parcel, package

TarH wedding gift, usually money given to the bride

TarHa (-aat) floor, story (of a building). p. TuruuH bedspread

Tari adj. fresh (food). f. Tariyya

Tariig (Turug) way; road

Tawiil (Tiwaal) tall; long. elat. 'aTwal. Tawiil al-gaama tall of statue

Tawwal II to lengthen s.th.

Tayr (Tuyuur) bird; sparrow

Tayyaara (-aat) airplane

Tayyib (-iin) fine, good; delicious. elat. 'aTyab. adv. well, in good health. Tayyib al-galb good-hearted

Ta9aam food. syn. 'akl. Gurfat 'a9aam dining room

Tifl ('aTfaal) infant; child

Ti9iim (-iin) delicious, tasty

TuHus (yuTHus) to fall down

Tulu9 (yiTla9) to emerge; to prove to be

Tuul v.n. length, tallness. Tuul al-layl all night long

w

wa/w- and

wa-'in conj. even if

w-haakaδa and so on and so forth, etc.

waadi (widyaan) valley

waafag III to agree. waafag 9al to approve s.th.

waaHid one; someone, somebody. waaHid min one of

waajib (-aat) duty, obligation. waajib 9ala kull waaHid. It's everyone's duty.

waalid 'al-waalid (the) father. 'al-waalidayn the parents

waasi9 (-iin) wide. elat. 'awsa9

waaTi adj. low, not high. opp. 9ali. elat. 'awTa

waffag II to make s.o. successful, prosperous (of God)

wagiyya (-aat) unit of weight = ¼ kilogram

wagt ('awgaat) petiod of time, time. syn. Hiin p. 'aHyaan

wagt-ma conj. when, at the time when

waHd- alone, by oneself

waja9 ('awjaa9) pain. syn. 'alam p. 'aalaam. waja9 'asnaan toothache

wakiil (wukalaa') agent; attorney

wakkal II to appoint as agent or representative

wala conj. nor. la ... wala neither ... nor. syn. maa∫ ... w-maa∫

walaakin conj. but. syn. bass

walad ('awlaad) son; boy

waLLa honestly, indeed. var. waLLaah

waLLaah honestly, indeed. var. waLLa

waniin v.n. groaning, moaning

waraa' prep., adv. behind. var. ware

wardi (-yyiin) adj. pink. f. wardiyya

ware adv., prep. behind; backwards. var. waraa'. syn. xalf

warra II to show s.o. or s.th.

war∫a (-aat) workshop

wassax II to make s.th. dirty

wasT prep. in the middle of

wasx (-iin) dirty, filthy

wasax ('awsaax) dirt, filth

waSl ('awSaal) receipt

waʃʃ (wujuuh) face

waTan ('awTaan) homeland, home country

waTani (-yyiin) national. 'al-matHaf al-waTani The national museum

waxxar II to move backwards or aside

wazaara (-aat) ministry. wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya the ministry of the interior. wazaarat al-muwaSalaat the ministry of communications. wazaarat al-xaarijiyya the ministry of foreign affairs. wazaarat al-9adl the ministry of justice. wazaarat aS-SiHHa the ministry of health. wazaarat at-tarbiya the ministry of education. wazaarat at-tijaara the ministry of commerce. wazaarat az-ziraa9a the ministry of agriculture. wazaarat al-'aʃGaal the ministry of public works. wazaarat al-'awgaaf the ministry of religious endowments

wazan (yuuzin) to weigh

waziir (wuzaraa') minister (cabinet)

wazza9 (9ala) II to distribute (among)

waẓẓaf II to employ

wa9d ('aw9aad) promise; pledge; appointed time

wigaaya v.n. prevention. al-wigaaya xayr min 9ilaaj. prov. Prevention is better than cure.

wilaada v.n. birth, delivery. makaan al-wilaada birthplace

wilaaya (-aat) state; region. wilaayat 'arizoona The State of Arizona

willa conj. or syn. 'aw

wisaada (wasaa'id) pillow

wisi9 (yisa9) to hold, have capacity for

wugaf (yiwgaf) to stop; to stand up

wuga9 (yiwga9) to take place, occur; to fall down

wuguuf v.n. standing; standing up; parking

wuja9 (yuuja9) to hurt, pain s.o.

wujid (yuujad) pass. to be found. laa yuujad miθla no equal can be found

wusTa f. of 'awsaT middle

wuSul (yiwSal) to arrive at a place; to reach s.o. or s.th.

wuSuul v.n. arrival

x

xaabar III to telephone s.o. or make a telephone call

xaaf (min) (yxaaf) to be afraid (of); to fear s.o. or s.th.

xaal ('axwaal) maternal uncle. 'ibn xaal cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle

xaala (-aat) maternal aunt; step-mother

xaalaf III to violate; to contradict

xaamis fifth

xaarij adv; prep. outside

xaatim (xawaatim) finger ring

xaatin (xatana) one who performs circumcision

xaaTi (-yiin) act. part. walking

xaaTrak! Goodbye!

xaawli (xaawlaat) towel. syn. manʃafa p. manaaʃif

xabar ('axbaar) matter; news item

xabaz (yaxbiz) to bake bread

xabba' II to hide, conceal; to save

xabbaaz (-iin) baker. syn. farraan

xadami adj. of service, rendering service. f. xadamiyya

xafiif (-iin) light, not heavy. elat. 'axaff

xalag (yuxlug) to create; to make

xalas (yaxlis) to undress, take off one's clothes

xalf adv.; prep. behind. syn. ware

xaliij (xiljaan) gulf. xaliij 9adan Gulf of Aden. 'al-xaliij al-9arabi the Arabian Gulf

xalla II to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.

xalwa place of retreat or recess

xaLaaS it's over, it's finished

xamsa five. xamsat rijaal five men. xamsa 'alf 5,000

xamsiin fifty

xamsmiya five hundred

xamsTa9ʃ/-ar fifteen

xaraj (yuxruj) to go out, come out, get out

xarbaT (yxarbiT) to mix up s.o. or s.th.

xarbaTa v.n. messing up s.o. or s.th.

xarr (yxurr) to fall down

xarrab II to destroy, ruin s.th.

xarraj II to send out, move out; to expel

xasaara v.n. loss, damage

xatan (yaxtin) to circumcise

xaTab (yuxTub) to ask for a girl's hand in marriage; to preach

xaTiib (xuTTaab) fiance, suitor; preacher

xaTiiba (-aat) fiancee

xaTiir (-iin) serious; dangerous

xaTT (xuTuuT) telephone line; (railroad, bus, air) line

xaTwa (-aat) step, stride; pace

xayma (xiyaam) tent

xayr v.n. goodness, benevolence. b-xayr well; in good health. xayr min better than

xayʃ coll. canvas. unit xayʃa

xayyam II to pitch up a tent; to camp

xayyaT II to sew

xazzag II to make holes in s.th.

xazzan II to chew qat

xaḍraa' (xuḍr) green (f.). m. 'axḍar

xidma (-aat) service

xiri (yixra) to defecate

xitaan v.n. circumcision

xiyaar coll. cucumbers. unit xiyaara

xizaana (xazaa'in) place where water is stored in a public bath

xtafa VIII to disappear

xtalaf VIII to be different

xubz coll. bread. unit xubza, Habbat xubz. xubz Galiiḍ wheat or corn bread. xubz muHammar toasted bread

xulab coll. mud. unit xulba

xuruuj v.n. exit, going out. opp. duxuul

xuTba (marriage) engagement

xuTi (yuxTi) to walk, go on foot

xuḍree' vegetables

y

ya voc. part. (with foll. n.) ya 9ali! Ali! ya 'asafaah! Oh grief! Unfortunately. ya bih short for ya 'abi! Father! ya salaam! (exclamation of joy, esp. after something good has happened). What a ...!

yaabis adj. dry, not humid. syn. naaʃif. elat. 'aybas

yadd ('aydi) hand

yahuudi (yahuud) Jew; Jewish. f. yahuudiya

yahwada belief in Judaism; piety, religiousness

yamiin adv. right; n. right hand

yasaar adv. left; n. left hand

yawm ('ayyaam) day

yawmiya adv. always, every day

ya9ni that is to say, i.e.

yibis (yiibas) to dry up; to wilt

yumkin perhaps, maybe

yurt coll. yoghurt

z

zaad (yziid) to increase, become more

zaani (-yiin) adulterous person. f. zaaniya

zaar (yzuur) to visit

zaaratHiin adv. sometimes

zabiib coll. raisins. unit zabiiba

zaff (yziff) to conduct a bride or a bridegroom in solemn procession

zaffa (-aat) wedding procession

zagam (yizgam) to hold, grab

zahr coll. flowers. unit zahra

zalaT money. syn. fuluus

zamal (yazmil) to chant

zaman ('azmaan) time. syn. wagt p. 'awgaat

zanna (-aat) woman's dress

zargaa' (zurg) blue (f.). m. 'azrag

zawaaj v.n. marriage; getting married

zawj ('azwaaj) husband. zawja wife

zayyad II to increase, augment s.th.

zayyan II to beautify; to decorate, to shave

zimbiil (zanaabiil) basket

ziraa9a v.n. planting; farming

ziyaada (-aat) excess; surplus; increase, increment

ziyaara v.n. visit, visiting

zubda coll. butter

zuGayyar (-iin) dim. of SaGiir. var. zaGiir young

zujaaj coll. glass

zukaam v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. nuzuul

zunnaar (zanaaniir) side curls

θ

θaaliθ third

θaamin eighth

θaanawi (-yyiin) secondary. madrasa θaanawiyya secondary school

θaani (-yiin) other; another; the other; the second. f. θaaniya

θagiil (-iin) heavy. elat. 'aθgal

θalaaθa three. θalaaθat rijaal three men. θalaaθa 'alf 3,000

θalaaθiin thirty

θalaaθmiya three hundred

θalaaθTa9ʃ/-ar thirteen

θallaaja (-aat) refrigerator

θamaaniin eighty

θamaaniya eight. θamaaniyat rijaal eight men. θamaaniya 'alf 8,000

θamaanmiya eight hundred

θamaanTa9ʃ/-ar eighteen

θaman ('aθmaan) price, cost; value

θawr (θiiraan) bull; ox

θawra (-aat) revolution

θa9l ('aθ9ila) fox; jackal

θiliθ ('aθlaaθ) one-third. var. θilθ

θintayn two (f.). m. 'iθnayn

θiyaab clothes. syn. malaabis

θurayya (-aat) candelabra

ð

ðahab coll. gold

ðahabi (-yyiin) adj. gold. f. ðahabiyya

ðaki ('aðkiyaa') clever; intelligent. elat. 'aðka

ðalHiin adv. now; nowadays

ðamaar Dhamar, city in the Y.A.R.

ðanb (ðunuub) sin, offense

ðawla dem. pron. those. var. ðawlaa'

ðibbaal wedding celebration

ðiib (ðiy'aab) wolf

ðimma (ðimam) responsibility; obligation. fi ðimmat ... It's the responsibility of ...

ðira coll. corn. unit Habbat ðira

ðubbi (ðibbaan, ðubaab) fly

ḍ

ḍaa' (l-) (yiḍii') to light, illuminate (s.th. or s.o.)

ḍahar (yaḍhar) to appear, seem. ḍahar l- to appear, seem to s.o.

ḍahr (ḍuhuur) back, one's back

ḍalam (yaḍlum) to oppress, treat unjustly

ḍamiir (ḍamaa'ir) conscience. murtaaH aḍ-ḍamiir peaceful of mind

ḍamm (yḍumm) to keep for oneself; to embrace

ḍarab (yuḍrub) to hit; to strike. syn. labaj

ḍarf (ḍuruuf) circumstance, condition

ḍariiba (ḍaraa'ib) tax; duty

ḍaruuri (-yyiin) necessary

ḍayf (ḍuyuuf) guest

ḍayyaf II to entertain s.o., treat s.o. as a guest. ḍayyaf 9ala to entertain s.o. to s.th.

ḍayyig (-iin) narrow. elat. 'aḍyag

ḍa9iif (-iin, ḍu9afaa') weak; skinny. elat. 'aḍ9af. ḍa9iif al-galb fainthearted

ḍiHik (9ala) (yiḍHak) to laugh (at) s.o.; to make fun of s.o.

ḍiig v.n. distress, hardship. wagt aḍ-ḍiig time of distress, difficult times. v.n. narrowness

ḍuhr noon, noontime. ba9d aḍ-ḍuhr in the afternoon.

9

9aa'ila (9awaa'il) family. syn. 'usra p. 'usar

9aad (with suffix pron.) ... still

9aad (9ala) (y9iid) to repeat, do s.th. again (to s.o.)

9aada (-aat) custom; habit

9aadatan adv. usually, habitually

9aadi (-yyiin) regular, ordinary

9aafa III to keep s.o. safe; to restore good health to s.o.

9aafiya v.n. health, well-being

9aagil (-iin) rational, wise. elat. 'a9gal

9aali adj. high. opp. waaTi. elat. 'a9la

9aam ('a9waam) year. syn. sana p. -waat

9aam ('a9waam) year. syn. sana p. siniin, sanawaat. 'al-9aam al-maaḍi last year

9aamil (9ummaal) laborer, workman. syn. ʃaagi p. ʃugaa

9aamm (-iin) adj. public; common; general. elat. 'a9amm

9aanad III to be stubborn

9aaSima (9awaaSim) capital city

9aaʃig l- (-iin) in love (with) s.o.

9aaʃir tenth

9aaTiʃ (-iin) thirsty

9aaḍ b- (y9uuḍ) to seek protection from s.o. (usually God)

9abd (9abiid) slave; servant

9adaala v.n. justice, fairness

9adad ('a9daad) number; numeral. 9adad sukkaan number of inhabitants

9adan Aden

9adas coll. lentils. unit Habbat 9adas

9add (y9idd) to count, enumerate

9add v.n. counting. 9add az-zalaT the counting of money

9adl v.n. justice. wazaarat al-9adl The ministry of justice

9adwaa' v.n. infection, contagion

9afwan! Sorry! Excuse me! 9afwan l- sorry for s.th.

9agal (ya9gil) to realize, comprehend

9agd (9uguud) necklace; lease; contract

9ajala (9ijiil) car tire, wheel

9ajan (ya9jin) to knead

9ajiib (-iin) wonderful, marvelous; strange; odd

9akal (ya9kil) to limp

9ala/9alay- prep. on. 9ala l-'agall at least. 9ala sibb conj. in order to, so that

9allag II to hang s.th.

9amaliyya (-aat) operation in a hospital. Gurfat al-9amaliyyaat the operating room

9amar (yi9mir) to build, construct

9amm ('a9maam) paternal uncle; father-in-law. 'ibn 9amm cousin (m.). f. bint 9amm

9amma (-aat) paternal aunt; mother-in-law

9ammaan Amman

9ammaar (-iin) mason; construction worker

9an prep. about. simi9t 9annak. I heard about you. 9an Tariig via. 9an Tariig San9a via Sanaa

9arabi adj. Arabic; an Arab. p. 9arab

9arag sweat

9araj (ya9ruj) to ascend to heaven

9arboon deposit, money deposited

9arjee' f. of 'a9raj lame person

9aruus (9irsaan) bridegroom. syn. Hareew

9aruusa (-aat) bride. syn. Hareewa

9asal coll. honey. ʃahr 9asal honeymoon

9asiib ('a9siba) dagger, usually uncurved

9asiir Asir, district in Saudi Arabia

9askari (9askar) soldier

9aSr afternoon, as in Salaat al-9aSr The afternoon prayer

9aʃaa' (-aat) dinner, supper. var. 9aʃee'

9aʃara ten. 9aʃarat rijaal ten men

9aTTaar (-iin) perfumer, chemist

9awar (yi9wir) to blind s.o. in one eye

9awee' (ya9wi) to bark

9awree' f. of 'a9war one-eyed. p. 9uuraan

9awwaḍ II to compensate, recompense

9ayb (9uyuub) defect

9ayn (9uyuun) eye, one's eye (f.)

9ayyad 9ala II to celebrate a feast with s.o.

9azab (9izbaan) single, not married

9azam (yi9zim) to invite s.o. 9azamni 9ala l-9aʃaa'. He invited me to dinner.

9aziima (9azaa'im) invitation, e.g., to a banquet, wedding, etc.

9aziiz (-iin) dear, beloved. elat. 'a9azz

9aḍm coll. bones. unit 9uḍmi

9iid ('a9yaad) feast, festival; holiday. 9iid al-'aḍHa the Sacrifice Feast. 9iid al-'umm Mother's Day. 9iid al-fiTr the Ramadhan Feast. 9iid al-miilaad Christmas. 9iid al-9ummaal May Day. 9iid ra's as-sana New Year's Day. 9iid miilaad birthday

9ijl (9ujuul) calf of a cow. coll. = laHm 9ijl veal

9ilaaj (-aat) medicine; remedy. syn. dawaa'

9ilim (ya9lam) to know, be cognizant of

9ilm v.n. knowledge, information. p. 9uluum science

9imaama (9amaa'im) turban

9imaara (9amaa'ir) building. syn. binaaya

9imil (yi9mal) to do; to make

9inab coll. grapes. unit Habbat 9inab

9ind prep. at; near. la-9ind as far as

9ind- to have. 9indi I have

9indima conj. when, at the time when

9inwaan (9anaawiin) address

9irif (yi9rif) to know; to realize

9irig (yi9rag) to sweat

9iʃaa' evening (m.). Salaat al-9iʃaa' The evening prayer

9iʃig (yi9ʃag) to fall in love

9iʃriin twenty

9iyaada (-aat) clinic, infirmary

9iyaal children; sons and daughters (no known singular)

9oToʃ (ya9Taʃ) to be, get thirsty

9tagad VIII to believe; to think

9ugir (MSA passive) to be wounded; to be killed

9umaan the State of Oman

9umaani (-yyiin) from, characteristic of Oman

9umr ('a9maar) age; lifetime. kam 9umrak? How old are you?

9urs ('a9raas) wedding; wedding ceremony

9uTla (9uTal) holiday; vacation. 9uTlat aS-Sayf the summer vacation

9uTuur coll. perfume

9uud coll. sticks; stems, stalks. unit 9uudi. p. 9iidaan individual sticks